

MUSIC - UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 06448 579 0

DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT AND CANON



EBENEZER PROUT

AUGENER'S EDITION NO. 2184



Art. 14
P9687d0

AUGENER'S EDITION, No. 9184.

DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT AND CANON.

BY

EBENEZER PROUT, B.A. Lond.


*Hon. Mus. Doc. Trin. Coll. Dublin and Edinburgh, and
Professor of Music in the University of Dublin.*

SIXTH IMPRESSION



214212
15.7.27

LONDON:
AUGENER LTD.



Printed in England

by

AUGENER LTD.,

287 Acton Lane, London, W. 4.

MT

55

P76

P R E F A C E.



VARIOUS causes have conduced to the somewhat long delay in the appearance of the present work. Since the second volume of this series (*Counterpoint, Strict and Free*) was issued, the author, at the request of the publishers, has compiled four small books supplementary to *Harmony* and *Counterpoint*. This for some time prevented his commencing the present volume. But the chief cause of the delay has been the difficulty of the task itself. A book which, like the present, deals with many of the most abstruse problems of musical theory, required a great deal of preliminary work, not only in examining and comparing existing treatises, but in writing a very large number of examples to illustrate the various points touched upon. Such a book, if produced in a hurry, would be of little or no value. The author is by no means unaware of its shortcomings; but he can at least honestly claim for it that he has spared neither time nor trouble in its preparation, and that he has done his best to make it practical and useful, especially for those who are studying without the aid of a master.

As mentioned in the preface to *Counterpoint*, it was originally intended to include the subject of Fugue in this volume. To have done so, however, would have necessitated the omission of so much which it is desirable that the student should know, and would have compelled the author to treat of Fugue itself in such a cursory, not to say perfunctory manner, that he soon decided to confine the present volume to Double Counterpoint and Canon, and to deal with Fugue in a separate work, which shall follow this as soon as he can find time to write it.

In treating of double counterpoint, it has been thought advisable to begin with it, as with simple counterpoint, in the strict style. It must, of course, be borne in mind that this is merely preliminary technical work to such double counterpoint

as is used in actual composition. It has been necessary in some respects to relax the strictness of the rules when applying them to double counterpoint—especially in the tenth, the most difficult interval to work. The fundamental principles of strict counterpoint are, nevertheless, observed; and the author believes that writing under restrictions will be of great value to the student, as giving him freedom in the later stages of his work. The whole of the examples to the strict double counterpoint have been written expressly for this work.

In treating of free double counterpoint, the plan pursued in the preceding volumes of this series, of taking the examples, as far as possible, from the works of the great masters, has been adhered to. It will be seen that the quotations are both more numerous and longer than in *Counterpoint*. This is because the student now approaches more nearly to actual composition, which can be better learned from the study of good models than in any other way. It is impossible to teach the invention of melody, though the general principles of its forms may be made intelligible enough; but the exercise of the imagination may be stimulated by the study and analysis of existing masterpieces; and though it is not to be expected that the student will ever acquire the skill of a Bach, yet, from the examination of that composer's works, he can at least discover many general principles to guide him in his own efforts. The chapters on double counterpoint on a florid subject, and with free parts, largely consist of analyzed extracts from the works of the great composers.

The subject of double counterpoint in the rarer intervals is passed over in silence by most theorists. Though far inferior in importance to those more frequently employed, these double counterpoints are not without interest; and, as they are more often used than is generally supposed, a chapter is given to this subject, in which some curious examples will be seen. In the last chapter of the first part of the book, an attempt has been made to simplify the difficult study of triple and quadruple counterpoint.

The second half of this volume, which deals with Canon, presented more difficulties to the author than the first, chiefly because of the impossibility of giving on many points any beyond the most general directions. In one respect, it is believed, the present book differs from most of its predecessors. A great part of the instructions on canon to be found in many treatises has

reference to matters which are not of the slightest practical use to the student. It is doubtful whether it is worth while for anybody at the present day to trouble himself about writing an infinite canon by augmentation, a *canon cancrizans*, or a riddle-canon. Yet the old text-books give elaborate instructions for the composition of these musical puzzles, for they are nothing better. As the object of these volumes is to teach what the student may really need, these subjects are not dealt with at all, though, for the sake of completeness, specimens of all the varieties are given. Only such canons are treated of in detail as possess true musical value, and the learner who masters these will find that he knows all that is really necessary for him. The study of double counterpoint, and of the various forms of imitation is an invaluable and indispensable introduction to the higher branches of composition, and amply rewards the musician for the somewhat severe labour necessary for its acquirement.

The author has to acknowledge his obligations for assistance from several quarters. He is indebted to a series of articles by Mr. J. S. Shedlock, in the *Magazine of Music*, for calling his attention to some of the examples of counterpoint in the rarer intervals in Bach's "Wohltemperirtes Clavier." He has to thank Mr. F. Corder for the canon in § 453, and Herr E. W. Fritsch, of Leipzig, for permission to reprint the canons in §§ 452, 468 from the *Musikalisches Wochenblatt*. His warm thanks are again due to Dr. C. W. Pearce, not only for valuable suggestions, but for his kindness in revising the proof-sheets of the volume—a more than usually troublesome work, owing to the large amount of music type.

LONDON, *July*, 1891.

NOTE.

The references throughout this volume, to "Harmony : Its Theory and Practice," refer to the Revised Edition.

For the convenience of those who may desire to continue to use copies of the First to the Fifteenth Editions, inclusive, the following table is inserted :—

Revised Edition.	First to Fif- teenth Editions.	Revised Edition.	First to Fif- teenth Editions.
Chapter II	Chapter III	Section 228	Section 192
" III	" IV	" 239	" 202
" IX	" X	" 251	" 207
" X	" XI	" 258	" 211
" XI	" XIX	" 294	" 243
" XVI	" XVIII	" 307	" 248
		" 313-321	" 253-258
		" 314	" 254
		" 318	" 257
		" 325	" 263
Section 75	Section 103	" 336	" 504
" 77	" 105	" 341	" 517
" 93-95	" 126-128	" 411	" 381
" 104	" 113	" 418	" 75
" 133	" 137	" 428	" 410
" 169	" 156	" 433	" 404
" 173	" 159	" 440	" 432
" 188-189	" 164-166	" 490, 491,	" 426 (a) (b)
" 208	" 170-171	505, 507,	433, 439
		520	& 460 (d)
" 224	" 190	" 645-647	" 562, 564

pp. 1-1057
pp. 132-235

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

[*N.B.*—The numbers refer in every instance to the sections, not to the pages.]

PART I.—DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT.

CHAPTER I.—INTRODUCTION page 1

Definition of Counterpoint, 1—Double, Triple, and Quadruple Counterpoint defined, 2—Enlarged meaning of Inversion, 3—Inversion at small distances not employed, 4—Limit in the distance of subjects to be inverted, 5—How to find the inversion of an interval at any distance, 6, 7—How to find the interval of inversion of two subjects, 8, 9—Example of double counterpoint in the octave, tenth, and twelfth, 10, 11—Strict double counterpoint, 12.

CHAPTER II.—STRICT DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT IN THE OCTAVE AND FIFTEENTH page 6

The difference between double counterpoint in the octave and the fifteenth, 13—Inversion in the octave; table of intervals, 14—Limited use of the perfect fifth, 15—Employment of the unison and octave, 16—Inversion of both parts in double counterpoint in the fifteenth, 17—*First species*: prohibition of the fifth; cadence, 18—Implied harmony, 19—How to write the exercises, 20—Examples in a major key, 21-23—The sixth above the dominant of a minor key allowed in *double* counterpoint, 24—Examples in a minor key, 25-27—*Second species*: use of dissonances; employment of the perfect fifth, 28—The cadence free, 29—Examples, 30-33—*Third species*: the fifth of a chord in the bass, 34—Treatment of the octave; the cadence, 35—Examples, 36-39—*Fourth species*: its difficulties; the cadence, 40—Examples, 41, 42—*Fifth species*: the cadence; the fifth as a harmony note, 43—Examples, 44-46—Examples of double counterpoint on a subject with notes of equal length, 47—Subjects for double counterpoint in the octave, 48.

CHAPTER III.—STRICT DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT IN THE TENTH page 23

Various methods of inversion in the tenth, 49, 50—Table of inversions, 51—The effect of inversion in the tenth, 52, 53—No consecutive intervals allowed, 54—Similar motion forbidden, 55—Unavailable intervals in harmony, 56—Melodic progressions which must be avoided, 57, 58—Implied root-progressions may be disregarded, 59—Choice of subject; an uncomfortable subject worked, 60-65—A good subject, 66—*First species*: in the major, 67—Ditto in the minor, 68—*Second species*: case in which similar motion is possible, 69—Examples, 70, 71—*Third species*: examples, 72, 73—*Fourth species*: rising suspensions allowed, 74—examples, 75, 76—*Fifth species*: examples, 77, 78—The subject not to be transposed, 79—Two counterpoints employed simultaneously, 80—Subjects for double counterpoint in the tenth, 81.

CHAPTER IV.—STRICT DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT IN THE TWELFTH *page 36*

Double counterpoint in the twelfth defined, 82—Much easier than in the tenth, 83—Effect of transposition in the twelfth, 84—Table of intervals; employment of the sixth, 85—Unavailable harmonic combinations and melodic progressions, 86—Choice of voices, 87—The cadence always free, 88—Any subjects available, 89—The first note, 90—*First species*: examples, 91—*Second species*: examples, 92, 93—*Third species*: examples, 94, 95—*Fourth species*: its difficulty; examples, 96, 97—This species of little use, 98—*Fifth species*: examples, 99, 100—Farewell to *strict* counterpoint, 101.

CHAPTER V.—FREE DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT IN THE OCTAVE, TENTH,
AND TWELFTH ON A CHORAL *page 45*

All harmonic resources available; prohibition of the bare fourth, 102—Fifth species only need be practised, 103—Dissonant notes, when sounded together, 104—Examples from Bach, 105–107—The resolution of dissonances to be considered, 108, 109—Employment of fundamental discords; how used in double counterpoint of the tenth and twelfth, 110, 111—Limitations in melodic progression, 112—Free double counterpoint on a choral, 113—Example in the octave; the implied harmony to be considered, 114—Necessity of considering root-progressions in free double counterpoint in the tenth, 115—Possibility of similar motion in ditto, 116—Example explained, 117–120—Example in the twelfth 121–126—How to choose subjects, 127.

CHAPTER VI.—FREE DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT ON A FLORID SUBJECT *page 58*

Definition of "florid subject," 128—Subject and counterpoint should be contrasted, 129—Relative importance of double counterpoint in the octave, tenth, and twelfth, 130—Various uses of double counterpoint, 131—*Double counterpoint in the octave*: examples from Bach, 132–135—Ditto from Handel, 136–139—Examples from Haydn's quartetts, 140–142—Ditto from his symphonies, 143, 144—Examples from Mozart, 145–147—Ditto from Beethoven, 148–150—Example from Cherubini, 151—Ditto from Mendelssohn, 152, 153—Ditto from Brahms, 154—*Double counterpoint in the tenth*: examples from Bach's "Art of Fugue," 155—Ditto with added thirds and sixths, 156–158—Simultaneous double counterpoint in the octave, tenth, and twelfth, 159—Incidental employment of double counterpoint in the tenth, 160—Example by Handel, 161—Ditto by Jomelli, 162—Ditto by Haydn, 163—Ditto by Mozart, 164—Ditto by the author, 165—Extended extract from Bach's "Art of Fugue" analyzed, 166–168—*Double counterpoint in the twelfth*: examples by Bach, 169–172—Ditto by Handel, 173, 174—Ditto by Mozart, 175—Ditto by Beethoven, 176—An entire piece written in this counterpoint by Kirnberger, 177—Analysis of the same, 178—Spurious double counterpoint, 179—Examples, 180, 181—The importance of the study of good models, 182—Working exercises, 183.

CHAPTER VII.—DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT WITH FREE PARTS ADDED *page 89*

Double counterpoint in only two parts comparatively rare, 184—Two simultaneous *canti fermi*, 185—Their harmonic possibilities, 186–188—Selection of harmony notes, 189—Auxiliary notes, 190—Free parts added to a short subject, 191—One added part in the middle, 192—A free part above, 193, 194—Ditto

below, 195, 196—Two free parts added in the middle, 197—Two upper parts added 198—One part above and one in the middle, 199—Two parts below, 200—One above and one below, 201—Summary of these examples, 202—The added parts themselves in double counterpoint, 203—Adding plain chords, 204—Additional parts improving weak progressions; 205, 206—Added parts to examples previously given; from Bach, 207, 208—Example from Handel, 209—Ditto from Beethoven, 210—Ditto from Cherubini, 211—Double counterpoint in the tenth with added parts, 212, 213—Ditto in the twelfth by Bach, 214—Ditto by Mozart, 215—Directions for working exercises, 216.

CHAPTER VIII.—DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT IN THE RARER INTERVALS page 105

The rarer double counterpoints only employed incidentally, 217—I. *Double counterpoint in the ninth*: Table of inversions, 218—Example by Marpurg, 219—Ditto by Lobe, 220—Ditto by Beethoven, 221—II. *Double counterpoint in the eleventh*: Table of inversions, 222—Example by Cherubini, 223—Ditto by Bach, 224, 225—Ditto by Beethoven, 226—III. *Double counterpoint in the thirteenth*: Table of inversions, 227—Example by Cherubini, 228—Ditto by Bach, 229—Simultaneous double counterpoint in the octave and thirteenth; example by Handel, 230—Ditto by Beethoven, 231, 232—IV. *Double counterpoint in the fourteenth*: Table of inversions, 233—Example by Marpurg, 234—Ditto by Bach, 235—Double counterpoint in the ninth and fourteenth, by Bach, 236—Ditto in the thirteenth and fourteenth, by Beethoven, 237—Simultaneous counterpoint in the twelfth and fourteenth, by Beethoven, 238—The cause of the difficulty of these rarer counterpoints, 239.

CHAPTER IX.—TRIPLE AND QUADRUPLE COUNTERPOINT ... page 116

Triple and Quadruple Counterpoint defined, 240—*Triple counterpoint*: the possible combinations, 241—Triple Counterpoint in the strict style useless, 242—The addition of thirds to a double counterpoint in the octave, 243—A faulty example, 244—The only legitimate kind, 245—Treatment of the fifth of a chord, 246—250—Consecutive chords of the sixth unavailable, 251—Selection of chords, 252—Each part to appear once in the bass, 253—Example from Cherubini, 254—Examples from Bach, 255—257—Ditto from Handel, 258—Ditto from Mozart, 259—Ditto from Cherubini, 260—Ditto from Beethoven, 261—Ditto from Haydn, 262—*Quadruple Counterpoint*: its possible positions, 263—General principles, 264—Example by Cherubini, 265—Ditto by Bach, 266—268—Ditto by Cherubini, 269—An example by Haydn analyzed, 270—273—Conclusion, 274.

PART II.—CANON

CHAPTER X.—IMITATION page 133

Imitation defined, 275, 276—*Strict and free imitation*, 277, 278—*Direct imitation*, 279—Ditto *by inversion*, 280—282—Ditto with reversed accents (*per arsin et thesin*), 283—Ditto *by augmentation and diminution*, 284—*Invertible imitation*, 285—*Interrupted imitation*, 286—*Retrograde imitation*, 287—*Partial imitation*, 288—*Close imitation*, 289—May be accompanied by free parts, 290—Examples: in the unison and octave, 291, 292—In the fourth below, 293—At various intervals, 294—Sequential, on a pedal bass, 295—At various intervals, 296, 297—Direct and inverted; by diminution and augmentation, 298—By

augmentation, 299—By diminution, inverted and direct, 300—Close imitation by contrary motion, 301—By inversion in a major key, 302—"Per arsin et thesin"; partial imitation, 303—Double imitation by inversion, 304—Canonic imitation in four parts, 305—Directions for the practice of imitation, 306—The use of imitation in actual composition, 307.

CHAPTER XI.—THE ROUND page 145

Definition of *Canon*, 308—Alteration of intervals, 309—Finite and infinite canon, 310—Varieties of canon, 311—*The Round*, 312-314—Two methods of composing a round, 315, 316—Importance of melodic interest, 317—A round composed; the first phrase, 318—The second phrase, 319—The third part, 320—The cadence, 321—A fourth part added, 322—Example by Dr. Hayes, 323—Ditto by Mozart, for four voices, 324—Ditto for six voices, 325—Ditto by Beethoven for three voices, 326—Ditto for four voices, 327—Ditto for six voices, 328—The round with instrumental accompaniment, 329—Ditto for mixed voices: example by Cherubini 330—Employment of this kind of canon in opera, &c., 331.

CHAPTER XII.—TWO-PART CANONS page 160

Canons employed incidentally, 332—How other canons differ from rounds, 333—Varieties of two-part canon, 334—*Finite* canon by direct imitation, 335—An example worked, 336—Choice of interval of reply, 337—Interval of time, 338—Strict and free imitation in canon, 339, 340—*Infinite* canon; "making the join," 341—Examples, 342-345—Importance of symmetry and form, 346—Canons in the fourth and fifth, 347, 348—An infinite canon by inverse movement, 349—Canons by augmentation and diminution, 350—Infinite canon by augmentation; example by C. P. E. Bach, 351—The use of two part canon in actual composition; examples by J. S. Bach, 352, 353—Ditto by Mozart, 354—Ditto by Schubert, 355—Ditto by Haydn, 356—Ditto by Mozart, 357—Ditto by Dussek, 358—Ditto by Clementi, 359.

CHAPTER XIII.—CANONS WITH FREE PARTS—ACCOMPANIED CANONS page 179

Definition of "free parts," 362—Various positions, 363, 364—The free parts should be composed simultaneously with the canon, 365—Example worked, 366—A canon with two free parts, 367—Examples, 368—By Bach, 369-371—Ditto by Mozart, 372-374—Accompanied canon by Mendelssohn, 375—Ditto by Haydn, 376—Example by Schumann, 377—Directions for work, 378

CHAPTER XIV.—THE CANON ON A CANTO FERMO, OR CHORAL page 191

A more difficult variety of Florid Counterpoint, 379—Cause of the difficulty, 380—Examples, 381, 382—How to begin a canon on a *canto fermo*, 383—Examples; a canon in the seventh, 384—Ditto in the fifth, 385—Ditto in the octave, 386—A minor *canto fermo*; canon in the fourth, 387—Ditto in the octave at half a bar's distance, 388—Ditto by inverse movement, 389—The advantages of this kind of work, 390—Two kinds of canon on a choral, 391—The choral itself treated in canon, 392—Example analyzed, 393-396—Examples by Bach, 397-399—The choral treated as a *canto fermo* with an independent canon upon it, 400—Examples from Bach's "Canonic Variations," 401-406.

CHAPTER XV.—CANONS ON ONE SUBJECT, IN MORE THAN TWO PARTS *page 206*

Canons for more than two voices, 407—The most usual intervals, 408—The method of composing, 409—Illustration of ditto, 410—General principles, 411—Infinite three-part canon by Byrd, in the octave and fourth, 412—Ditto by Friedemann Bach, 413—Three-part canons by Mozart, 414, 415—Three-part canon on a *canto fermo*, by Azopardi, 416—Four-part canon in the fifth and octave by Albrechtsberger, 417—Ditto with close imitation, by Mozart, 418—Four-part canon by Clementi, 419—Infinite four-part canon in the unison, by F. Bach, 420—Four-part canon with free parts, by Mozart, 421—Infinite canon for six voices, by Kirnberger, 422—Ditto for nine voices by Marpurg, 423—The nomenclature of canons, 424—"Open" and "close" canons, 425—Examples of close canon 426-428—An infinite canon for twelve voices, 429.

CHAPTER XVI.—CANONS WITH MORE THAN ONE SUBJECT ... *page 220*

Double and triple canons, 430, 431—General directions, 432—Infinite canon, 4 in 2, by Mendelssohn, 433—Finite canon, 4 in 2, by Bach, 434—Example by Mozart, 435—Ditto by Schumann, 436—Canon by Mozart, 4 in 2, by inversion, 437—Ditto, 4 in 2, with a free bass, by Bach, 438—Ditto, 6 in 3, by Mozart, 439—Ditto, 6 in 2, by Raff, 440—Ditto, 8 in 4, by Mozart, 441—Ditto, by Cherubini, 442—Ditto, 12 in 4, by Mozart, 443—The practical use of such canonic writing, 444.

CHAPTER XVII.—CURIOSITIES OF CANON *page 235*

Ingenuity of the old theorists, 446—Canons with double and triple augmentation, 447, 448—*The Retrograde Canon (Canon Canerizans)* explained; example by Bach, 449—Retrograde Canon, 8 in 4, by Byrd, 450—*Reverse Retrograde Canon*; example by Lobe, 451—Ditto by Bolck, 452—Ditto by Corder, 453—Canonic imitation by *Inverse contrary movement*; example by Cherubini, 454—*The Circular Canon*; example by Bach, 455—*The Polymorphous Canon*, 456—Example by Stölzel analyzed, 457-463—A subject to work, 464—*The Riddle-Canon*; examples from Martini, 465, 466—Ditto by Bach, referred to, 467—Curious riddle-canon, by Link, 468—Solution of ditto, 469, 470—Canon, 4 in 2, on a *canto fermo*, with free part, by Byrd, 471—Canon, 6 in 2, with free part, by Tallis, 472—Infinite canon, 7 in 1, on a ground bass by Bach, 473—Canon, 36 in 1, by Romano, 474—Conclusion, 475.

DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT AND CANON.



PART I.—DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT.



CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTION.

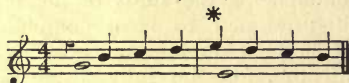
1. Before commencing the study of the present volume, the student will be presumed to have completed his course of Harmony and of simple Counterpoint, both in the strict and free styles. He will therefore be fully aware that by the word Counterpoint in its general sense is meant the art of combining two or more independent melodies so as to make correct harmony.

2. If two melodies which are to be played or sung together are so written as to be capable of inversion, that is, if either of them may be above or below the other, and the harmony still be correct, we have *Double Counterpoint*, a term which simply means "invertible counterpoint." The word "double" is appropriate, because each of the two parts has a double function; it may serve either as an upper melody, or as a bass. If three or four melodies are combined, any one of which can be a highest, lowest, or middle part, we have triple or quadruple counterpoint, according to the number of voices. We shall deal first with Double Counterpoint, reserving Triple and Quadruple for a later part of this volume.

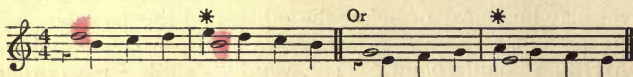
3. The first thing necessary for the student in commencing this branch of work is to enlarge his conception of the meaning of the term *Inversion*. Hitherto the word has always been used in one sense—that of changing the relative position of notes by putting one of them one or more octaves higher or lower than before, or sometimes by placing one note an octave higher and another an octave lower. Thus, when we speak of a sixth as being the inversion of a third, we mean that one of the two notes of the interval is placed an octave higher or lower than before. Similarly, the inversion of a chord means the changing the relative position of some note or notes of that chord, one of them being the root, thus altering its pitch by one or more octaves. But in

double counterpoint the inversion may be at *any* interval, though inversion in the octave is the most common, and the most useful.

4. It is important that the student should be able to calculate with ease and accuracy what intervals are produced by the inversion of other intervals at any given distance, and also, when two counterpoints are inverted with respect to one another, at what interval the inversion is made. He already knows (*Harmony*, § 25*) that the number of the inversion of an interval in the octave is found by subtracting the number of the interval itself from 9. The reason we subtract from 9 and not from 8 is, of course, because the note of the interval which does not change its position is reckoned twice. Thus a sixth is the inversion of a third; and $3 + 6 = 9$. We do not usually make inversions at a less interval than an octave, because if either melody were of any considerable compass, it is probable that some of the notes would cross, and there would be no inversion. If, for instance, we write two subjects,

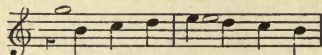


and then try to invert them in the fifth, either by placing the lower part a fifth higher or the upper part a fifth lower, it is evident that the parts will cross, and that at the * there will be no inversion, the part which was the higher still remaining so.



For this reason inversions at a less distance than the octave are not used; but any distance beyond the octave may be taken.

5. It is a general rule that two subjects which are to be inverted must not be at a greater distance from one another than the interval of their inversion. In the example just given there was no inversion in the fifth at * because the two notes were originally more than a fifth apart. But it would have been quite possible to invert the passage in the octave,



or in the tenth,



because these intervals are nowhere exceeded in the distance between the two parts. The practical objection to inversion at a

* The references to "*Harmony*" and "*Counterpoint*" throughout this volume are in all cases to the author's books on those subjects. (Augener Ltd.)

less distance than the octave is, that it restricts the range of the melodies too much.

6. We saw just now that the inversion of an interval in the octave was found by subtracting the number of the interval from 9, and we gave the reason for this. The same reason applies to inversion at any other distance. Hence we get a simple rule of universal application :

To find the inversion of an interval at any distance, subtract the number of the interval itself from the next number above that of the distance at which it is to be inverted.

7. An example or two will make this perfectly clear. We wish to know what a fifth becomes when inverted in the tenth. The next number above 10 is 11, and $11 - 5 = 6$. The pupil can verify this at once. In the first example in § 4 the last crotchet of the first bar is the fifth above G. In the inversion in the tenth in § 5, the D has become B, the sixth below G. Similarly, to find the inversion in the twelfth, subtract from 13; in the fourteenth, subtract from 15, and so on in every case. It ought to be added that the only intervals commonly used for inverting are the octave or fifteenth (the double octave)—the latter being necessary if the two melodies are more than an octave apart—the tenth, and the twelfth. Inversions at the other intervals are very rare; we shall give a few examples later in the volume.

8. In analyzing compositions containing double counterpoint, such as fugues, it is often useful to be able to ascertain the interval in which two subjects have been inverted. The process here is exactly the converse of that in the preceding case. Observe the two intervals in their different positions; add their numbers together, subtract 1 from the total, and we get the interval of inversion. For instance, if we find that a third by inversion has become a sixth, $3 + 6 = 9$. Take 1 from 9, and we see that the inversion was in the octave. If the third by inversion had become an octave, $3 + 8 = 11$, the interval of inversion was the tenth; if it had become a tenth, $3 + 10 = 13$, and the inversion was in the twelfth.

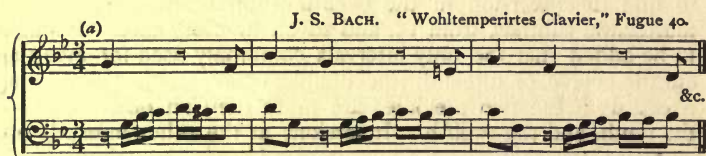
9. It sometimes happens, in double counterpoint other than the octave, that the two voices will be in the same *relative* position to one another, but the counterpoint will be at a different interval, as in the following passages from Bach's Fugue in B flat (No. 45 of the "Wöhltemperirtes Clavier")—



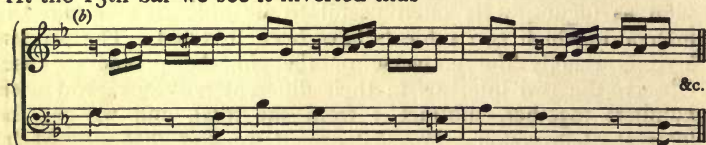
Here the themes are the same in both passages, but the intervals are different. To find the nature of the counterpoint in such a case, invert the *smaller* of the two intervals *in the octave*, add the other interval to the inversion, subtract 1, and the remainder

gives the interval of inversion. In the above example, if we take the third quaver of the first bar, we see a tenth at (*a*), an octave at (*b*). Of these, the octave being the smaller, we invert it; it becomes a unison; $1 + 10 = 11$; therefore the double counterpoint is in the tenth. If we take the first note of the second bar, we obtain the same result. The third at (*b*) being the smaller of the two intervals, we take its inversion, the sixth, and add it to the fifth at (*a*), $6 + 5 = 11$; and here again the rule we have just given holds good.

10. We shall now give an example of double counterpoint in all the usual intervals, taken from No. 40 of Bach's Forty-Eight Fugues in the "Wohltemperirtes Clavier," which will illustrate the rules we have given. We shall not quote the full harmony where it is in three or four parts, but shall merely extract those voices which are in double counterpoint with one another. At the 5th bar of the fugue we find the following passage—

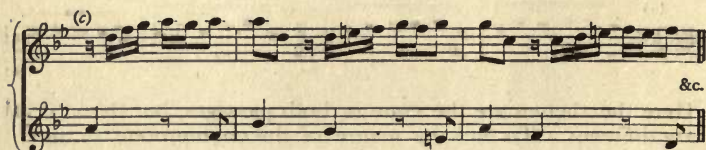


At the 13th bar we see it inverted thus—



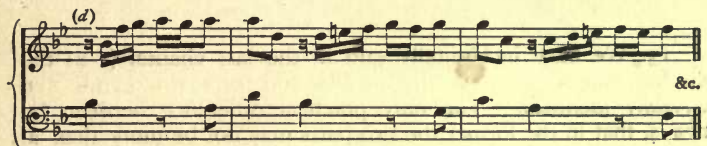
To find the interval of inversion, we take any of the notes in both passages, and add their intervals. Let us take the first note in the second bar. At (*a*) the interval is a sixth, at (*b*) it is a tenth, $6 + 10 = 16$; the inversion is therefore at the fifteenth or double octave. We know that in harmony a tenth and a third are practically the same interval. If we call the interval at (*b*) a third, we get $6 + 3 = 9$, therefore double counterpoint in the octave, which is virtually identical with that in the fifteenth.

11. Later in the same fugue, we meet with some different inversions. At the 28th bar is the following—



(The alteration of the first note of the lower part here is the

result of the construction of the fugue, and has nothing to do with the double counterpoint.) It will be seen that the rest is identical with the upper part of (a). Here we notice that the lower part of (a) is transposed a twelfth higher, and we have double counterpoint in the twelfth. Let us apply our test, as before, to the first interval in the second bar. At (a) it was a sixth, it is now a seventh, and $6 + 7 = 13$. Lastly, at bar 36, we get another inversion—



Here the upper part is almost the same as at (c), but the bass is a sixth lower. To be certain of the distance of the inversion here, we must once more apply our rule. The first interval in the second bar at (a) was a sixth; its inversion is a fifth. As $6 + 5 = 11$, the double counterpoint here is in the tenth. If the student has understood these examples, he will have little difficulty in analyzing any combination he may meet with in the works of the great masters.

12. In treating Double Counterpoint we shall begin, as with simple counterpoint, by working it in the strict style. It must be understood that this is simply the preparatory technical work to the free Double Counterpoint used in actual composition. To those who have conscientiously worked at strict counterpoint, it will present but little difficulty. We take first double counterpoint in the octave and fifteenth, as being the most used and the most useful.

CHAPTER II.

STRICT DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT IN THE OCTAVE AND
FIFTEENTH.

13. We have incidentally said in the last chapter (§ 9) that double counterpoint in the octave and in the fifteenth were virtually identical. The only practical difference between the two is, that in the former the two parts may not be more than an octave apart, and in the latter they may. But with this exception, all the rules for the one apply equally to the other; and, in fact, double counterpoint in the fifteenth is, far more often than not, spoken of as being in the octave.

14. It is evident that inversion in the octave changes neither the names of the notes of the inverted part nor the intervals between the successive notes of the melody, the only alteration being that of pitch. We shall see later that this is not the case in any other species of double counterpoint. But while the names of the notes of the inverted part remain the same, its relation to the part with which it is inverted is entirely different. This will be clearly seen by placing under one another in two columns all the intervals up to the octave with their inversions.

INTERVALS:	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
INVERSIONS:	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1

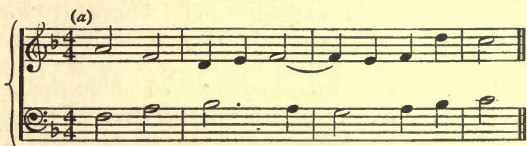
Notice that, as mentioned in the last chapter (§ 4), the number of the interval added to that of its inversion amounts to 9 in every case.


15. On examining the above table, we shall see that the dissonant intervals (the second and seventh) are also dissonant in their inversions, while perfect and imperfect consonances also do not change their nature by inversion in the octave. But, as we are now writing in two parts, the lower part must always make a correct bass to the upper one (*Counterpoint*, § 113). The perfect fifth when inverted, becomes a perfect fourth; and, in the strict style which we are now studying, a fourth with the bass is always a dissonance (*Counterpoint*, § 29). The perfect fifth, therefore, although a consonance, can only be employed in strict double counterpoint in the octave under special limitations, which we shall explain as we proceed.


16. It will further be noticed that an octave when inverted becomes a unison. Though the octave may be used freely in simple counterpoint, the unison is only allowed on the first and

last notes of an exercise. A little more liberty may be permitted in this respect in double counterpoint; it will nevertheless be well for the student to avoid the octave and unison as far as possible on an *accented* note, excepting at the beginning or end of a counterpoint, though their employment is not absolutely prohibited. If the double counterpoint is in the fifteenth, this caution, as regards the octave, need not be attended to, as the octave below then becomes the octave above, and *vice versa*.

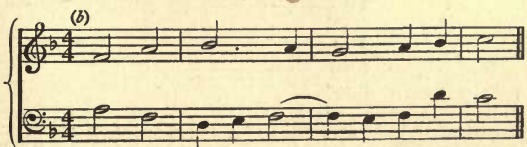
17. In double counterpoint in the fifteenth, it will often be found convenient, instead of changing the position of one voice by two octaves, to place one part an octave higher, and the other an octave lower than before; in many cases, indeed, this may be necessary in order to keep the parts within a reasonable compass. Take for example the following passage—



As these two subjects are in two places more than an octave apart, it is clear that they must be inverted in the double octave. But if we place the upper part two octaves lower, the first note of the second bar will be , which is too low; and if we

transpose the bass two octaves higher, the last note will be .

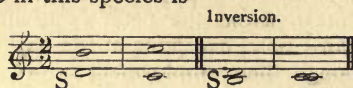
It will therefore be best to put the upper part an octave lower, and at the same time the lower part an octave higher, thus—



It will be seen that the *relative* position of the two parts to one another is precisely the same as if one had remained stationary, and the other had been transposed two octaves, but that both are now in a convenient position.

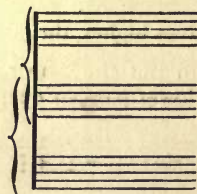
18. We will now proceed to double counterpoint of the first species. The chief point to notice here is, that it is impossible to use the interval of the fifth at all, because by inversion it becomes a fourth, which in strict two-part writing is unallowable. Care must also be taken not to exceed the compass of the octave between the two voices, unless the inversion is in the fifteenth. If the subject leaps much, it will often be impossible to avoid the overlapping of parts (*Counterpoint*, § 31); this is less objection-

able in double than in simple counterpoint. The only available form of cadence in this species is



19. One point remains to be mentioned. Owing to the necessity of retaining the same melody above and below the subject, we can allow ourselves rather more liberty than in simple counterpoint as to *implied* harmony. This refers more particularly to the interval of the third above the mediant, which in the majority of cases will represent $I\hat{b}$, and not $IIIa$. The inversion of this interval can only represent $III\hat{b}$, and many cases will occur in which this chord has to be followed by one of those which, in the "Table of Root Progressions" (*Counterpoint*, p. 32), is marked as only "possible." We may be content now if we avoid the absolutely *bad* progressions.

20. The best way of writing exercises in Double Counterpoint is to use a score of three staves, placing the Canto Fermo in the middle, and writing the counterpoint above, and its inversion below. It will, of course, be understood that no three-part harmony is implied; but this method gives the best opportunity of observing the two melodies in their dual relation to one another. It will be well to indicate this by a double brace at the beginning of the lines, thus—



21. We will now take two of the subjects so often treated in *Counterpoint*, and work on them double counterpoints of all species, beginning with the first. We take first a subject in a major key—

Double Counterpoint.

It will generally be found convenient to write the counterpoint

and its inversion (when in the octave) for two voices, the compass of which is an octave apart; either (as here) the subject in the alto with the counterpoints in treble and tenor, or (as in some of the examples we shall presently give) the subject in the tenor with the counterpoints in alto and bass. The two basses—the subject when the counterpoint is above, and the counterpoint when the subject is above—should always be figured. The only point requiring notice in the example just given is that in the third and fourth bars of the inversion the parts overlap (§ 18). The only way to have avoided this would have been to take the unison A as the fourth note of the upper part, and this would have been far more undesirable than the course we have adopted. The repetition of the note C would have been extremely weak; no repetition of a note should be allowed in two-part counterpoint.

22. In our next example we will, for the sake of variety, write the counterpoint in the 15th.

We here write the inversion in the bass, as it would be too low for a comfortable tenor part. Notice at (a) the chord $\text{III}\flat$, and observe its progression. The third interval (b) is marked as a chord of the sixth. The tenth (or third) G_E might also represent $\text{III}a$; but if we so consider it here, the progression to the following chord ($\text{III}a$ to $\text{IV}\flat$) is one of the bad ones, while if we regard it as $\text{I}\flat$, the progression from $\text{III}\flat$ to $\text{I}\flat$, though not one of the strongest, is at least possible. Here is an illustration of what was said in § 19.

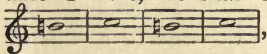
23. Now let us look at the inversion of this counterpoint. At the third bar we find $\text{III}\flat$ again. The following chord (c) may equally well represent $\text{IV}a$ and $\text{II}\flat$; but (as at (b) just noticed), we regard it as $\text{II}\flat$ here, because $\text{III}\flat$ to $\text{II}\flat$ is a good progression, while $\text{III}\flat$ to $\text{IV}a$ is only a possible one. At (d) we see another of the weaker progressions, $\text{III}\flat$ to $\text{V}\flat$. These will often be necessary in strict double counterpoint of two parts.

24. We will now take a subject in a minor key. As with simple counterpoint, this will be found more troublesome than a double counterpoint in the major, because of our smaller choice of harmony. We therefore, as usual in cases of difficulty, permit ourselves a little more liberty. The octave and unison may be

somewhat more freely used than in a major key. But the most important concession refers to the harmonizing the mediant of the scale. In simple counterpoint the sixth below the mediant is forbidden (*Counterpoint*, § 118), because of its implying a chord which is unavailable. But if we disallow it here, we shall be also prevented from using the third above the mediant, representing $I\flat$; and the only possible notes to place above the mediant will be the octave or unison and the sixth. It will often happen that neither of these will be good; therefore, as the sixth below the mediant is itself a consonance we can use it, if necessary, in *double* counterpoint, though it implies no available chord, because here the claims of melody are superior to those of harmony. In figuring this interval it will be well to put the 6 in brackets, thus—(6)—to show that it implies an *interval* only, and not a chord. An illustration of this point will be seen in the example now to be given—

The musical notation shows a subject and its double counterpoint in F major. The subject is on a single staff, and the double counterpoint is on two staves. The subject starts on D4 and moves through E4, F4, G4, A4, B4, C5, and D5. The double counterpoint starts on D5 and moves through C5, B4, A4, G4, F4, E4, and D4. The interval of a sixth below the subject is marked with a bracketed 6 (6) in the double counterpoint staff.

25. Here we have intentionally taken a subject which is not very easy to work. Let it be noticed that the upper melody is here almost, so to speak, compulsory. We can take no other note than the octave to commence with; as the lower counterpoint should not begin with a first inversion. The fourth note of the subject is the only one which allows a choice of harmony, and if instead of D (representing $II\flat$), we take the chord of IVa , every note of that chord gets us into trouble. F in the upper part gives either a unison or bad hidden octaves; C would be a repetition of the preceding note; if we take the upper A, we have a seventh with one intermediate note; while the lower A must either be followed by the unison, or by a leap of an augmented interval. Up to the fifth bar, therefore (to borrow a metaphor from the chess-board), every move is virtually forced.

26. Now look at (a), bar 6. The E flat of the subject can only bear a first inversion above it; the only possible notes of the counterpoint are C, E, and G, the root, third, and fifth of the tonic chord. Our cadence is already fixed (§ 18); if we take C here, we shall not only have the very weak repetition , but the whole counterpoint will consist, with the exception of the fourth note, of nothing but C and B \flat

E flat will not do here ; we cannot come down by similar motion to a unison, to say nothing of the impossible leap of an augmented fifth ; and if we take the upper octave we break a law of melodic progression (*Counterpoint*, § 19), for after the leap of a diminished fourth we do not return within the interval. We have therefore absolutely no good note here but G, and we consequently take it in spite of the fact that its inversion will represent an interval, and not a chord. It will not often be needful to use this interval in any other than the first, and sometimes the fourth species, because of the larger resources at our disposal. Observe that it would have been possible to take G also at the third bar of this example ; we did not do it then, because there was no necessity for it.

27. For the sake of getting more variety in the melody, we will make our next counterpoint at the 15th.

After the full explanation given of the last example, but few remarks are needed for this. At (a) we have taken the unison as the best note available ; B♭ would have led to the same position as in the last example ; we cannot repeat the D ; and if we take E (the interval of the sixth which we have just been discussing), we shall have four consecutive sixths between the two parts. Though these are not so strictly prohibited in double as in simple counterpoint, it is well to avoid them if possible. Besides this, we wished to show that a counterpoint could be written on this subject without using the sixth above the dominant at all.

28. In double counterpoint in the octave, of the second species, the dissonant intervals (the seconds, fourths, and sevenths) can be introduced as passing notes on the unaccented, and even occasionally on the accented, parts of the bar. The fifth, being the inversion of the fourth, can also be thus used ; but it is important to remember that it can only be taken in an upper part in a descending, and in a lower part in an ascending, passage. A moment's thought will show the student the reason for this.

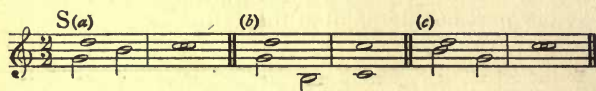
29. The cadence of the second species differs in an important respect from that of any other. It is impossible in this species

It must be a passing note

to make a cadence which can be properly inverted. The usual cadences for simple counterpoint in the upper part are

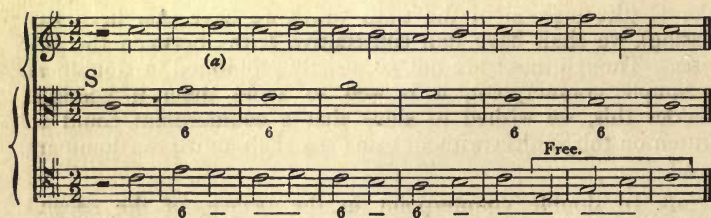


If we invert (a) in the octave, we shall have a fourth below the subject on the accented beat; while (b) will not invert in the octave at all; and though possible to invert it in the 15th, it would still not be good to do so, because of the weak progression of the harmony with inversions of two chords in the bar. On the other hand, of the usual cadences in the lower voice



(b) exceeds the limit of an octave, and all three when inverted give a fourth taken as a harmony note, instead of as a passing note. For this species, therefore, the cadence is always free, that is to say, no attempt is made to invert it, but the last three or four notes of the two counterpoints are quite different. It should be noted that the forms (b) of both upper and lower cadences are available for double counterpoint in the octave, though containing the interval of a tenth, as they have not to be inverted.

30. We now give some examples of the second species, taking the same subjects as before—



At (a) we see the fifth introduced on the second beat of the bar as a passing note. The last four notes in the inversion show the free cadence spoken of in the last paragraph. As with simple counterpoint of the second species, it is best to take passing notes, where practicable, on the unaccented beats, in order to secure a smoother melody.

31. We now write another double counterpoint, also in the octave, on the same subject, endeavouring to get as much variety as possible.

At (a) and (c) will be seen the unison on the unaccented beat. At (b) is the perfect fifth used as an auxiliary note, and not (as in the last example) as a passing note.* At (d) we have an auxiliary note quitted by leap of a third (*Counterpoint*, § 165). This device should be sparingly used in strict writing; it is introduced here to obtain a better melody. The only other notes available would have been A, which would have been weak here (compare the preceding and following bars), or F, which would have given in the next bar a seventh with one intermediate note.

32. We next take our minor subject, and first write to it a double counterpoint in the octave—

The only point to notice here is that the inversion of the third bar at (a) gives the interval of the sixth above the dominant (§ 24). Here, however, we distinctly have a chord implied in the second half of the bar, viz.: *Ib*. We have, therefore, figured the interval with (6) and exceptionally marked the implied harmony under the second minim of the bar.

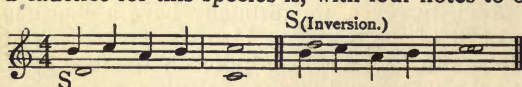
33. One more example of the second species will suffice, and this shall be in the fifteenth.

* For the distinction between auxiliary and passing notes see "*Harmony*, § 316.

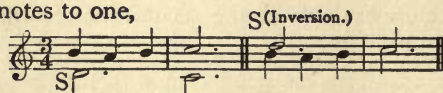
At (a) the bass evidently implies two chords in the bar. Though we rejected this progression for the cadence, it may occasionally be introduced in the course of a counterpoint. Special attention should be given to (b). Here the sixth above the dominant at the beginning of the bar does not of necessity imply the bare interval, as in the third bar of the last example. On the contrary, it is better here to regard it as an accented passing note ; and the passage shows us the one exceptional case in which the fifth may be taken as a harmony note. It must be on the second half of the bar, preceded by an accented passing note, and (as its inversion will be a fourth) it must be, as here, quitted as well as approached by step. It is but seldom that opportunity will occur for its use ; it is introduced here to show under what circumstances it is possible.

34. In the third species the general rules for simple counterpoint of the same species are mostly to be observed. A fifth can still only be taken as a passing or auxiliary note ; the exceptional treatment of this interval shown in our last example is seldom practicable with four notes to one. But the rule which restricts the employment of the fifth of a chord in the lowest part (*Counterpoint*, § 223) is considerably relaxed in double counterpoint, as its use in an upper part would otherwise be extremely limited. It may in double counterpoint be taken on any part of the bar except the first ; it is, however, better not to use it below the root when this note is present, unless the fifth is so treated as to have something of the character of a passing note, or come between other notes of the chord. Illustrations of these points will be seen in our next example.

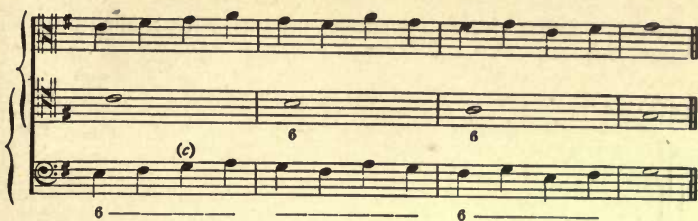
35. Excepting on the first beat of the bar, an octave in this species should never be approached by conjunct motion, as its inversion will give the unadvisable progression from a second to a unison. This, though *possible* when the second is a passing note, should be avoided altogether in strict double counterpoint. The only good cadence for this species is, with four notes to one,



With three notes to one,



36. Our first example of this species with four notes to one



shows at (a) how little variety is sometimes possible in commencing one of these counterpoints. When the subject leaps, as here, from tonic to dominant, there is no other good commencement than that given here, or in the following example, which it will be seen is almost identical. A double counterpoint is mostly harder to write on a subject that leaps than on one that moves chiefly by conjunct degrees. At (b) in the inversion is seen the fifth of the chord below the root. Notice that here the root is not present, and we do not trouble ourselves, as in simple counterpoint, about the *implied* $\frac{6}{4}$. At (c) the root is present, but here the G, coming between F and A, though a note of the chord, acquires the character of a passing note.

37. In our next example, written on the same subject,

it will be seen that except the cadence no bar is the same as in the last counterpoint. At (a) the fifth is taken below the root, but (as at (b) of the last example) the root is not present in the upper part. At (b) the A in the bass is figured as a sixth, because the implied harmony (VII^b to I^a) is good, while II^a to I^a would be bad.

38. We next give two examples of four notes against one in a minor key—

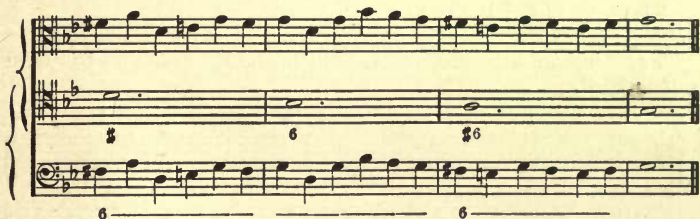
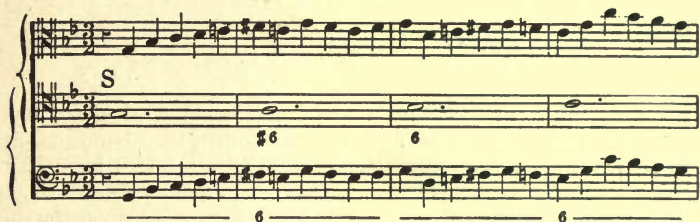
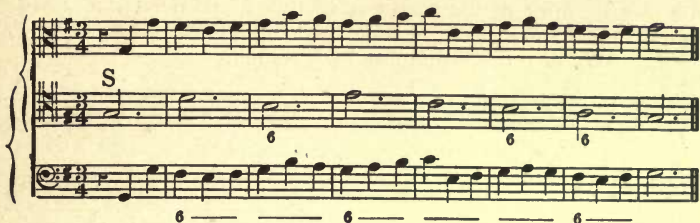
The musical score for Exercise 38 consists of four systems, each representing a four-note-against-one counterpoint exercise in a minor key. Each system is written for a grand staff (treble and bass clefs).

- System 1:** Marked with a large 'S' in the treble staff. The treble staff contains a single note (F4) followed by three measures of rests. The bass staff contains a single note (F3) followed by three measures of rests. Fingering numbers '6' and '#6' are indicated below the bass staff. A '(a)' annotation is placed above the final measure of the bass staff.
- System 2:** Similar to System 1, but with different fingering and a different final note in the bass staff.
- System 3:** Similar to System 1, but with different fingering and a different final note in the bass staff.
- System 4:** Similar to System 1, but with different fingering and a different final note in the bass staff.

Throughout the score, horizontal lines with '6' and '#6' are placed below the bass staff of each system, likely indicating fingerings or specific intervals.

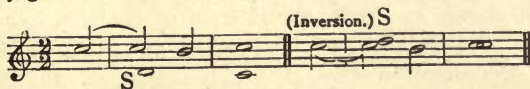
After the explanations already given, the only remarks to be made on these counterpoints are, that at (a) in the inversion of the first example two chords in the bar must be implied; and that, as with the examples in the major, every bar in the two exercises is different, except at the cadence, for which there is no other good form.

39. Counterpoint with three or six notes to one being so much less frequently used than that with four, it will suffice to give one example of each.



These counterpoints require no explanation.

40. The fourth species is very difficult to work in strict double counterpoint, owing to the limited means at our disposal. The suspensions 9 8 and 4 3, with their inversions are available; but 6 5 is evidently inadmissible, as also is 7 8 in an upper part, though its first inversion 5 6 can be taken. We are also greatly restricted as to our syncopations by the prohibition of the fifth. The only good cadence for this species is



If the suspension cannot be prepared, the cadence must be free, as in the second species.

41. It would be easy to write subjects against which it would be absolutely impossible to put a double counterpoint strictly of the fourth species. The student therefore, though it will be well for him to work a few exercises of this kind, need not devote much time to it; the fifth will repay him much better for his labour. We give two examples, as specimens—

[illegible]

It so happens that this subject can be very easily worked ; it has not been needful to break the syncopation at all.* Note that at (a) the unison is taken, because otherwise we should have had five consecutive sixths between subject and counterpoint. Let the student also mark at (b) the fifth as a prepared suspension in the *lower* voice, and ask himself why it could not be equally so taken in an upper part.

42. Our minor subject is much more difficult to treat satisfactorily.

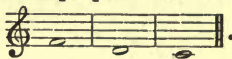
Musical score for "The Rose Tree" in 2/2 time, featuring a Soprano (S) and a Bass (B) part. The key signature has one flat (B-flat). The Soprano part is marked with (a) and (b). The Bass part includes fingerings: 7, #6, #5, 6, 6, 6, (6), 6, 7, #6.

Observe that at (a) we are forced to break the suspension, as the G, if tied, would in the bass have become a fourth below the subject. At (b) it is only possible to continue the suspension by taking the rather unsatisfactory interval of the sixth above the dominant. Notice also that the inversion of (a) must evidently imply two chords in the bar.

* The author has, since writing this counterpoint, discovered that it is identical with the example he had given in § 268 of *Counterpoint*. The coincidence is purely accidental; the earlier book was not referred to at all while writing these exercises.

43. The fifth species will be found not only less difficult, but more interesting to work than the fourth. The best forms of cadence are



The student will by this time be quite able to see the inversions for himself. The form of cadence at (a) is on the whole best; but (b) will be needful if it be impossible to prepare the suspension, as, for example, if the subject ends .

It should also be noticed that it will now be possible to take the fifth of a chord as a harmony note in the upper voice, though this could not be done in the fourth species. Our next example will show how this is to be managed.

44. We now give some specimens of the fifth species—

At (a) we have the fifth of a chord taken as a harmony note in the upper voice. As it becomes a fourth by inversion, it must of course be prepared, and it must descend; the fourth, to which it descends, becomes a fifth in the inversion. It will be seen that those notes which in the upper counterpoint are harmony notes, become passing notes in the lower, and *vice versa*. At (b) of the lower counterpoint we have the implied bad chord progression *IIa* to *Ia*. We have more than once said that in double counterpoint, considerations of root progression, though not to be wholly disregarded, are of less importance than a good flow of melody.

45. For the sake of getting more melodic variety, we will write our next example in the fifteenth, instead of the octave—

Example 45 shows two systems of double counterpoint. The first system, labeled (a), features a subject 'S' in the upper staff and a lower staff labeled 'In the 15th.' with a 6th interval marked. The second system, labeled (b), shows the lower staff with intervals of 6, 6, 7, 6, 6, 3, 5, and 2 marked.

At (a) in the upper counterpoint, there are no consecutive octaves with the subject, because the tied E at the beginning of the bar is a note of the harmony. The lower counterpoint at (b) must clearly imply two chords in the bar.

46. We now give two examples of the fifth species in a minor key—

Example 46 shows two systems of double counterpoint in a minor key. The first system, labeled (a), features a subject 'S' in the upper staff and a lower staff with a 6th interval marked. The second system, labeled (a), shows the lower staff with intervals of 6, 6, 6, 6, 6, 6, 6, and 6 marked.

Example (a) shows a subject in the treble and its octave transposition in the bass. A suspension 'S' is marked above the first note of the subject. The bass staff has figured bass notation: 5, 2, 4, 6, #6. Example (b) shows a similar treatment with different rhythmic values. The bass staff has figured bass notation: 6, (6), 5, 2.

Very little explanation is needed here. At (a) of the first example, we see the same treatment of the fifth as a consonance which was noticed in § 44. At the first bar of the second example at (a) it looks as if the suspension were prepared by a crotchet. Though this would not be absolutely forbidden, it is best in general that the preparation should be a minim. In the present case the G has been already sounded as the first note of the counterpoint, and the mental effect is therefore quite satisfactory. In the two examples just given, an effort has been made to obtain as much variety as possible, both in melody and rhythm.

47. It is comparatively seldom that in actual composition we find double counterpoint written against a subject, the notes of which (as in the *canti fermi* given in this chapter) are of equal length. Here are two examples, as specimens—

Example (a) is from HANDEL. "Judas Maccabeus." Example (b) is from MOZART. Mass in C minor. Both examples show a subject in the treble and its octave transposition in the bass, with equal note lengths. Example (a) ends with "&c." and example (b) ends with "&c."

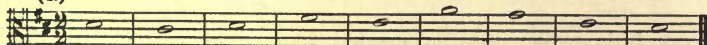
Far more commonly both the parts which are in double counterpoint are in notes of unequal length—two parts of the fifth

species, so to speak. This kind will be dealt with later, when we come to treat of free double counterpoint.

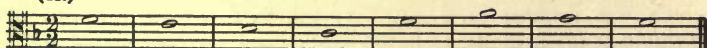
48. We conclude this chapter by giving a few subjects for double counterpoint in the octave. It will hardly be possible to write ten or twelve different exercises on the same *canto fermo*, as with simple counterpoint; to do this well, would require the mastery of resource of a Bach. But with patience and perseverance, the student will generally be able to invent two or three counterpoints in each species, except the fourth. When he has worked all the subjects given here, he may take any of those to be found in any treatise on counterpoint, or, if he prefers, he may write *canti fermi* for himself. As soon as he has acquired fluency in strict double counterpoint, he will be ready to commence the far more interesting study of the free double counterpoint of Bach, Handel, and the great masters who have followed them.

SUBJECTS FOR DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT IN THE OCTAVE.

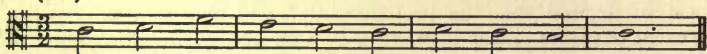
(I.)



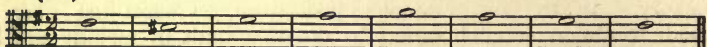
(II.)



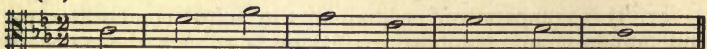
(III.)



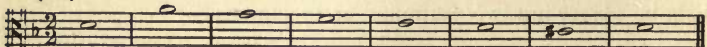
(IV.)



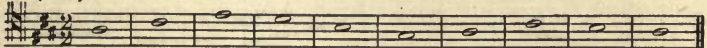
(V.)



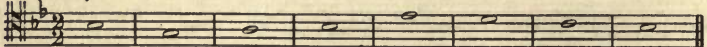
(VI.)



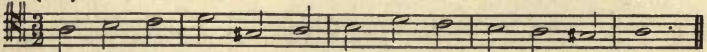
(VII.)



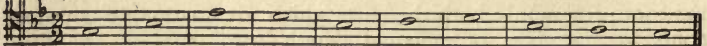
(VIII.)



(IX.)



(X.)

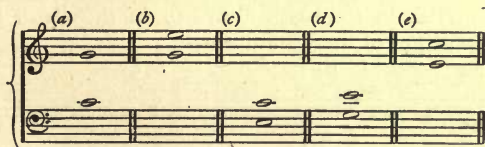


CHAPTER III.

STRICT DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT IN THE TENTH.

49. Double Counterpoint in the Tenth is that in which a counterpoint to a given subject is inverted a tenth higher or lower, as the case may be. But, as the interval of a tenth consists of an octave and a third added together, there are two other ways of inversion in the tenth. One of the two parts may be raised an octave, and the other lowered a third; or one may be lowered an octave and the other raised a third. It is important that the student should clearly grasp the fact that, whichever of these four methods of inversion be chosen, the *relative* position of the two notes to one another will remain the same, though their absolute pitch will be different in each case.

50. An example will make this perfectly clear.



At (a) is the interval of the perfect fifth. Let us invert it in the tenth in the various ways just described. If we keep the upper note in its place, and put the lower note a tenth higher, we have (b); if, on the other hand, we put the upper note a tenth down, we get (c). Now move both, but in opposite directions, just as we did in § 17 when inverting in the fifteenth. If we raise the lower part a third, instead of a tenth, and bring the upper part down an octave, we have (d), which it will be seen is the same as (b), but an octave lower; and lastly, if we lower the upper part a third, and raise the lower part an octave, we get (e), which is the same as (c) an octave higher. The important point to notice is that in each case the inversion of the fifth gives the same interval—the sixth, though in two cases it is a major, and in two a minor, sixth.

51. The above example shows one of the chief differences between double counterpoint in the tenth, and that in the octave. When a note of any interval is inverted in the octave, its name always remains the same; but inversion in the tenth always

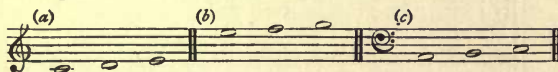
changes the name of a note. To find the inversion of any interval in the tenth, we subtract the number of that interval from 11 (§ 6). This gives the following table—

INTERVAL:	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
INVERSION IN THE TENTH:	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1

Of course no interval larger than a tenth can be used in this counterpoint (§ 5).

52. It will be seen from this table that every consonance when inverted in the tenth remains a consonance, and every dissonance remains a dissonance. It will further be noticed that the perfect consonances (the unisons, fifths, and octaves) become imperfect consonances (tenths, sixths, and thirds) when inverted, and *vice versâ*. The perfect fourth is of course a dissonance in two-part counterpoint. The only exceptions to the general rule given above are that the sixths above the subdominant, both in the major and minor key, and above the submediant and leading note in the minor key, become dissonant fifths by inversion. This point we shall notice later.

53. It must be further remarked here that inversion in the tenth changes not only the names of the notes but their position in the scale, and their consequent relation to one another. For example, if we take the first three notes of the scale of C, and invert them either in the tenth above or in the tenth below, we change the position of the semitones—



At (a) we see a tone between the first and second notes, and another tone between the second and third. If we invert the passage a tenth higher, as at (b), we have a semitone between the first and second, and a tone between the second and third notes; while the inversion a tenth lower, as at (c), gives a tone between the first two notes, and a semitone between the second and third. It will thus be seen that the whole character of a melody is changed by inversion in the tenth, unless we add accidentals to take it into another key.

54. If we now turn to the table of inversions given in § 51, we shall be able to draw some inferences which will assist us in making rules for writing double counterpoint in the tenth. In the first place, we notice that as the third by inversion becomes an octave, and the sixth becomes a fifth, it is impossible to have consecutive thirds or sixths, such as we are accustomed to in simple counterpoint, or in double counterpoint in the octave. Hence we get our first general rule:

No consecutive intervals of any kind are allowable.

55. Now we go one step further. We know that in strict

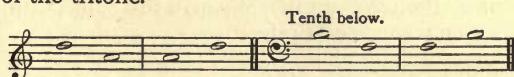
counterpoint hidden fifths and octaves are altogether forbidden. But if, in double counterpoint in the tenth, we approach either a third or a sixth by similar motion, the inversion of the passage must give an octave or a fifth also approached by similar motion. Therefore, in this counterpoint we cannot employ similar motion at all, and our second rule is :

Only contrary and oblique motion are available.

As no repetition of a note is allowed in the first species, we are in this evidently restricted to contrary motion.

56. The limitations to which we have to submit in writing double counterpoint in the tenth are by no means exhausted yet. There are various intervals, both in harmony and melody, which we shall now see are unavailable, because they cannot be inverted without breaking rules. If the subject contains the subdominant, this note cannot have a sixth above it, because its inversion in the tenth below will give the interval of the diminished fifth. The leading note in the subject can in a major key take no interval but a sixth above it; because the third when inverted would give a doubled leading note, while the fifth is a diminished fifth, and the octave is obviously impossible. In a *minor* key, there is no note that can be placed above the leading note—at all events in the first species; because here the inversion of the sixth gives the augmented fifth. In other species the difficulty may be evaded in some cases by treating the augmented fifth as an accented auxiliary note.

57. There are also several pitfalls to be avoided in the melodic progressions. The leap in an upper part from the supertonic down to the submediant, and its converse, the upward leap from submediant to supertonic, give in the tenth below the interval of the tritone.



If the counterpoint is in the lower part, it is clear that the leap up from supertonic to dominant, and its converse, will also give a tritone when inverted in the tenth above.

58. In the minor key we are even more hampered, in consequence of the four augmented intervals to be found between various degrees of the scale. The simplest way to show the intervals to be avoided will be by the table here given—

	(a)	(b)	(c)	(d)
Unavailable in upper part.				
Augmented Intervals.				
Unavailable in lower part.				

The middle staff shows the four augmented intervals of the minor key. The upper staff shows the intervals which if inverted in the tenth below will give augmented intervals, and the lower staff shows intervals which become augmented when inverted in the tenth above. We have omitted the lower intervals at (*b*) and the upper ones at (*c*) because there is no danger with these, as they are tritones themselves, and the student will of course avoid them. Some of these intervals, however, can be occasionally saved, as will be shown later, by the use of the melodic forms of the minor scale.

59. It will be seen that double counterpoint in the tenth requires so much to be avoided that its rules may be compared to the laws of the Decalogue, nearly all of which begin with the words, "THOU SHALT NOT." Consequently, this kind of counterpoint is far less frequently met with, and much less useful than that in the octave. It is nevertheless important that the student should be able to work it, and he will find its practice very beneficial. But, as he will have to work under such difficulties, he need not now trouble himself at all about implied root-progressions, and may content himself if his melodies are good.

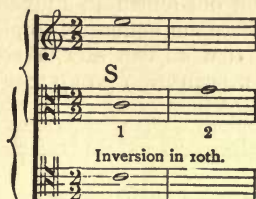
60. It is not every subject which is suitable for double counterpoint in the tenth, especially in the strict style. In actual composition, where we are free to make our own parts, we should, of course, take care to write the two melodies with special reference to their inversion in the tenth; but with many of the ordinary *canti fermi* it will be found all but impossible to write a satisfactory counterpoint of this kind. To illustrate this, we will take the major subject which we used in the last chapter, for double counterpoint in the octave, and try to write a double counterpoint in the tenth on it. We give the subject, numbering the notes, for convenience of reference—



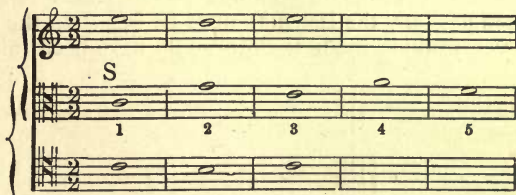
We shall take the first species, as being the simplest, and also because the harmonic progressions will almost always be the same in the other species. We shall not have the same freedom of choice here that we should have were our double counterpoint in the octave.

61. As our exercise should begin with the tonic chord in root position, our first note above the C of the subject must be E; for the octave C, if inverted in the tenth, would give A in the bass, while G would give E, representing the first inversion. We must, of course, take E as the *tenth* above C—not the third, or the parts will cross on the next note. Of course if the second note of the subject is below the first, we must begin with the

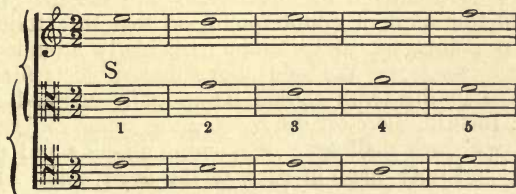
third, or else the contrary motion with the second note will make us exceed the allowed interval of the tenth.



62. For our second note we have not much choice. We already know that we must move in contrary motion to the subject (§ 55). If the upper part falls to B, the inversion will give octaves by contrary motion. The unison, though sometimes necessary, should not be used if it can be avoided. Here D is obviously the best note, giving B as its inversion. If for the third note we rise to G, its inversion gives the unison; we therefore return to E.



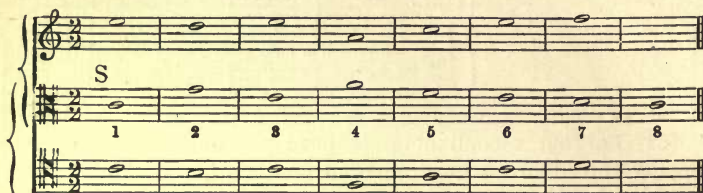
63. Thus far we have had no difficulty at all; but now our troubles begin. The best note to put above 4 will clearly be C; but then what shall we do with 5? As this note is the subdominant of the key, we cannot have D above it (§ 56), nor can we rise to A, because the inversion will give octaves by contrary motion. The only possibility is F, the octave of the subject.



64. The subject (5, 6) now falls from F to E; our counterpoint must therefore rise to G—the only possible note (§ 51). But from E the subject again falls to D; and the counterpoint must either exceed the limit of a tenth, or move in similar

motion, both of which are forbidden. We are therefore in a fix, and must "try back."

65. We will now for our fourth note take the unison A instead of C. This will alleviate our sufferings somewhat, but not much. The student will see that we can now take C for our fifth note, and E for the sixth; we can even go up to F for the seventh—

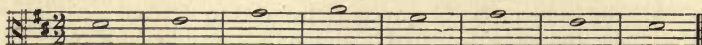


We are obviously no better off than we were before. But we have a loophole for escape. In double counterpoint in the tenth, as with the second species in the octave, the cadence may, if necessary, be free, *i.e.*, the last two bars need not be invertible. Sometimes it is possible to continue the inversion to the very end; sometimes only the last note need be free. In the exercise we have been working the best close would have been this—



Here the lower counterpoint at 6 7 moves in thirds with the subject; but this does not matter, as the second third is not intended for inversion.

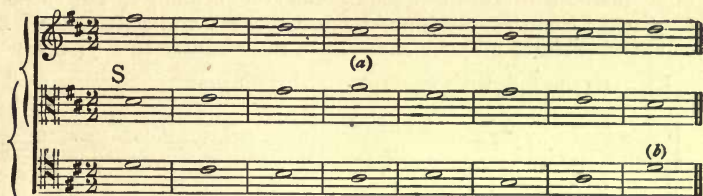
66. We have entered in some detail into the difficulties incidental to this kind of counterpoint, so that the student may know what points are to be more particularly attended to in working his exercises. We said above that subjects for double counterpoint in the tenth should be specially adapted for that purpose. Instead, therefore, of treating the same subjects as in the last chapter, we shall write two, one in a major and one in a minor key, and work them in each of the five species. For our major subject we choose the following—



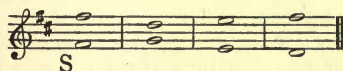
It will be noticed that we have avoided all large intervals. A

subject which leaps much will often be found somewhat troublesome for treatment in the tenth.

67. A double counterpoint of the first species against this subject gives very little difficulty.

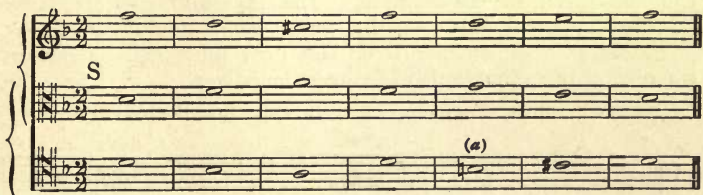


The only points to notice in this example are that at (a) we see in the upper counterpoint the false relation of the tritone, which we disregard here (though we would not allow it in double counterpoint in the octave), because we do not trouble ourselves about root-progressions provided our melodies are good; and that, except the last note of the bass, at (b), the inversion is kept up throughout. It would have been possible here to keep the inversion to the very end by writing the last half of the counterpoint thus—



In our next example we shall see the close strict.

68. We now take a subject in the minor—

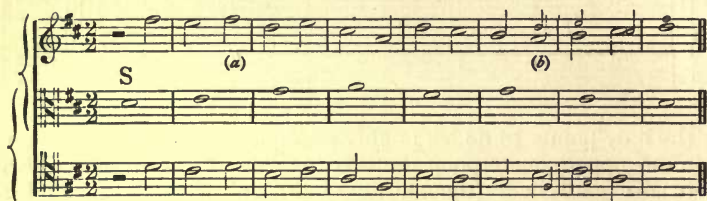


Observe that at (a) we use in the lower voice the *melodic* form of the minor scale. This is often advisable; in the present case the G of the subject takes the fifth in the upper counterpoint; if we write the third, B, we must either make it B \sharp , as we have done below, or have an augmented second from B \flat to C \sharp , which we must obviously avoid. Moreover, the use of the B \sharp here allows us to continue the strict double counterpoint to the last note.

69. In the second species of double counterpoint in the tenth, we shall evidently have oblique motion on the unaccented half of each note of the subject. It is best, where possible, still

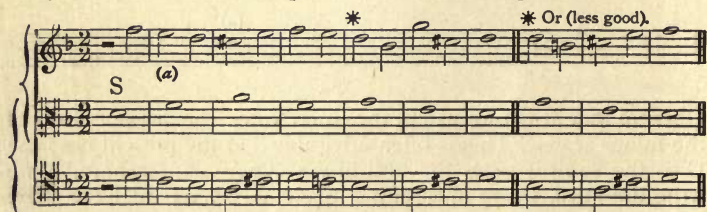
to approach the accented notes by contrary motion, though occasionally, in other species than the first, similar motion may be employed, *provided that the progression between the two accented notes is contrary.* (See below the examples to §§ 76, 77.) It is often possible to continue the double counterpoint strictly to the very end ; but this need not be insisted on, and a free cadence will often produce a better effect, as in the example to § 71 below.

70. In the following example of this species



will be seen at (a) a passing note quitted by leap of a third (*Counterpoint*, § 165), and the same procedure is repeated in the next bar. This is done to obtain a better melody. In the third bar we cannot take the upper G instead of E, or we shall have a seventh with one intermediate note ; and, apart from the similar motion, we cannot have either B, or the lower G—the former because its inversion gives consecutive octaves, and the latter because of the leap of a tritone to the following C#. At (b) we give two forms of cadence ; that in small notes preserves the double counterpoint to the end ; but because of the leap of the leading note, it is musically less commendable than the free cadence given in large notes. The inversion of this latter (marked in small notes in the tenor part) would not be so advisable as a cadence, and the last note must still be free, as we obviously cannot finish on the submediant.

71. Our minor counterpoint of the second species



shows at (a) an effective employment of an accented passing note. In this species, these may be used without hesitation if the melody is improved thereby. In this example, the strict close is even less good than in the major given above. A free close here is decidedly preferable.

72. We now take the same subjects for the third species—

At (a) we have apparently implied the commencement of the lower counterpoint with a first inversion. But if the student will try for himself, he will see that the only other possible commencements here were in the upper part,

The two leaps of an octave at (a) are certainly not desirable; neither would the sixth preceded by a third in the same direction, as at (b), be good. We have, therefore, preferred to begin as above, which gives both the third and fifth of the chord in the upper part, and neutralizes, as far as possible, the effect of the third in the bass by putting the root of the chord both before and after it. The final note of the bass is, of course, free.

73. It will be seen that in commencing our counterpoint on the minor subject

we can use a passing note at the end of the bar, which was

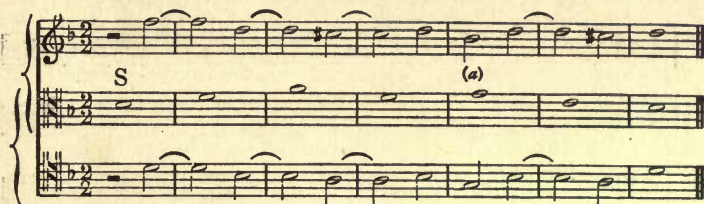
impracticable with the other *canto fermo*. The only point requiring remark in this example is the bar of counterpoint at (a). The fourth note, F#, in the upper part must either imply a false relation with the harmony, or a major chord on the subdominant. Its inversion in the bass cannot be satisfactorily explained, from a *harmonic* point of view, according to the laws of strict counterpoint. The progression is here, nevertheless, perfectly good, and it is introduced to impress upon the student's mind that in this difficult branch of his art he need not trouble himself at all about the *implied* root-progressions, if only his melodies and the counterpoint in itself are correct. It must be remembered that, in actual composition, double counterpoint in the tenth is only written in the *free* style. Even in this there are restrictions enough in all conscience ; and if in addition we hamper ourselves by limitations very useful in simple counterpoint, but quite needless here, we shall lade ourselves with burdens grievous to be borne, and good writing will become almost impossible.

74. The force of what has just been said will be seen when we attempt this counterpoint in the fourth species. Here it is absolutely necessary that the rules for simple counterpoint of this species must be to some extent relaxed ; because, as similar motion is not permitted, whenever the subject descends, the suspension must ascend. The student will remember that the only ascending suspension allowed in simple counterpoint is that of the tonic by the leading note ; but when inverted in the tenth, above or below, we shall no longer have the suspension of the same degree of the scale. We therefore so far modify the rule as to allow the use of all rising suspensions (just as in harmony), provided they move by step to a consonance. The fourth species then becomes tolerably easy to work.

75. In our first example of this species

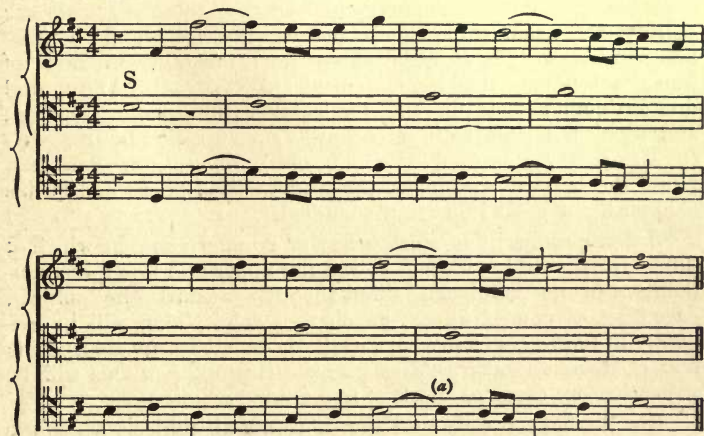
we are able, with the liberty we are now allowing ourselves, to avoid breaking the syncopation at all. At (a) is the upward suspension 5 6, while at (b) the suspension of the tonic by the leading note has become by inversion that of the submediant by the dominant. At (c) we make the close free for the same reason as in § 70.

76. In our example in the minor,



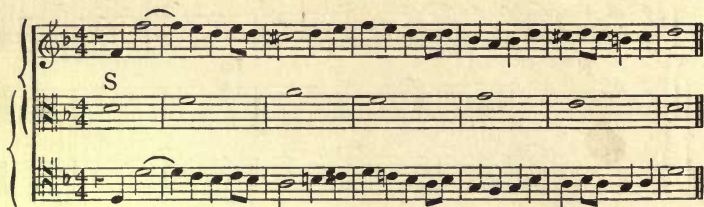
the progression at (a) must be specially noticed. It has been needful here to break the syncopation, because if we held the D from the last bar, it could not be followed by E (§ 56); neither could we rise to G, because the inversion would give a tritone (§ 58). If we fall from D to B, we must break the suspension here, or we shall have an augmented second; and the third bar from the end is a much better place than the last but one for breaking the syncopation. It will be seen also that the suspension 7 6 in the upper part gives as its inversion 4 5; that is, the fifth is approached by similar motion. This would have been wrong had the B of the tenor been the only harmony note of the fifth bar; but here G is also a harmony note, and we therefore have contrary motion from accent to accent (§ 69).

77. The fifth species is by no means the most difficult to work in the tenth.



We need only say of this example that at (a) is a precisely similar instance in the lower part to that explained in our last counterpoint, and that the small notes at the end of the upper part show, as with some of the preceding examples, the possibility of continuing the counterpoint strict to the end.

78. Our last example



requires no explanation. The progression to the cadence is the same as in the two examples last given. To keep strictly to contrary motion here, we must either have had an augmented second or a major third above the subdominant.

79. It was said in § 49 that inversion in the tenth could be effected in various ways. The student will see that in all the examples given we have never changed the position of the *canto fermo* by placing it a tenth higher or lower. This is because if we did so, we should so alter its character as to render it unsuitable for our purpose ; for it would not then end on the tonic, and we should either have to finish with an inversion of the tonic chord, were the transposition of the subject upwards, or with the submediant chord if we transposed downwards. In writing exercises on a *canto fermo*, the student should follow the same plan. We may again remind him that these exercises are nothing more than the technical preliminaries for actual composition ; in free writing, as we shall see later, the other methods of transposition can also be employed. We probably never find double counterpoint in the tenth used throughout a piece ; and when it is met with, it is mostly accompanied by free parts (that is, parts not in double counterpoint), filling up the harmony. None the less will working in the strict method prescribed in this chapter be of great value to the student.

80. A peculiarity of this variety of counterpoint, in which it differs from all other kinds,* is that the upper and lower counterpoints can be employed simultaneously against the subject, excepting, of course, where the close is free. They will be evidently in tenths (or sometimes in thirds or sixths, by transposing one of them an octave), throughout. Examples of this will be seen when we come to speak of free double counterpoint.

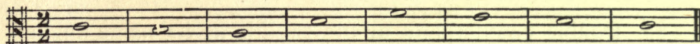
81. We have already said that it is not all subjects which are adapted for double counterpoint in the tenth. We therefore give a few *canti fermi* written specially for the purpose. The student should work on each subject one counterpoint in each of the five species. It will be difficult to invent more than one, as his

* Excepting the very rarely used double counterpoint in the thirteenth (see Chapter VIII.).

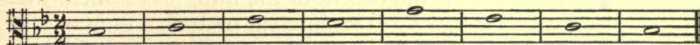
resources are so limited, but it will not be necessary in any case to break the strict rules obligatory upon him, and working at these unquestionably troublesome exercises will go far to lighten his subsequent labours.

SUBJECTS FOR DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT IN THE TENTH.

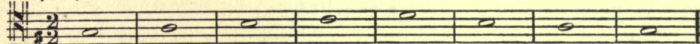
(I.)



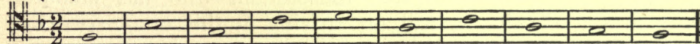
(II.)



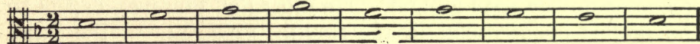
(III.)



(IV.)



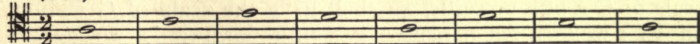
(V.)



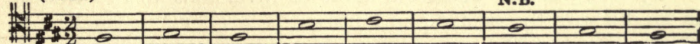
(VI.)



(VII.)



(VIII.)



N.B.

N.B.--From this point the close must be free.

CHAPTER IV.

STRICT DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT IN THE TWELFTH.

82. Double counterpoint in the twelfth, as its name implies, is that which is designed for inversion in the twelfth above or below. As the twelfth is the octave of the fifth, it is evident that we can also invert two parts at this interval by transposing one of them an octave, and the other *in the opposite direction* in the fifth, just as in double counterpoint in the tenth we can transpose one part an octave and the other a third (§ 49).

83. The double counterpoint we have now to consider is far more used, and far more useful, than that in the tenth. It is also so much easier to work that the student who has laboured through the last chapter will, on arriving at this one, experience something of the same feeling of relief as a mountaineer, who, after toiling up a terribly steep and rough place, comes to a piece of comparatively level ground. He must not, however, expect to find double counterpoint in the twelfth, especially in the strict style, quite so easy as that in the octave.

84. A moment's thought will show us that inversion in the twelfth (or fifth) changes the character of a melody far less than that in the tenth; for, with one exception, the semitones will remain in the same place in the scale. Thus, if we transpose the scale of C a fifth upwards, we shall have the scale of G without an F \sharp ; while if we transpose it a fifth downwards, we get the scale of F without a B \flat .

85. We will now make our table of inversions in the twelfth, as we did with the octave and tenth—

INTERVALS: I 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12

INVERSION IN THE 12TH: 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

This table shows us that octaves become fifths, and fifths octaves, while thirds become tenths, and tenths thirds. This latter fact will obviously facilitate our work greatly, since we shall be no longer prohibited (as in double counterpoint in the tenth) from the use of consecutive thirds, or of similar motion. The interval requiring special care is the sixth, which, as by inversion it becomes a seventh, can in the strict style only be used as a passing note, or as a prepared discord. We shall give an example presently (§ 100) of its employment in this way.

86. As by transposition in the twelfth the position in the scale of every note is altered, we shall find, as we did with the

tenth in the last chapter, certain harmonic combinations and melodic progressions which it will be needful to avoid, because their inversion will produce prohibited intervals. For harmonic reasons, we cannot take an octave above the subdominant in either the major or minor key, because the inversion of the upper note a twelfth will give us the diminished fifth above the leading note. Neither, for a similar reason, can we in a minor key take the octave above the submediant, or the octave below the supertonic or mediant. The melodic progressions to be avoided will be best shown by a table similar to that which we made for double counterpoint in the tenth (§ 58).

The image shows three staves of musical notation in C minor (three flats). The top staff is labeled 'Unavailable in upper part.' and contains four measures of music, each starting with a note labeled (a), (b), (c), or (d). The middle staff is labeled 'Augmented Intervals.' and contains four measures of music, each starting with a note labeled (a), (b), (c), or (d). The bottom staff is labeled 'Unavailable in lower part.' and contains four measures of music, each starting with a note labeled (a), (b), (c), or (d). The notes are: (a) C4, (b) E4, (c) G4, (d) B4 in the upper part; and (a) C3, (b) E3, (c) G3, (d) B3 in the lower part.

We have given the progressions in the key of C minor, to show all the augmented intervals; but the student must observe that those given at (a)—from tonic up to subdominant, and its converse, in the upper part; and from leading note up to mediant, and its converse, in the lower part—are also unavailable in a major key, as the tritone between subdominant and leading note exists in that key also.

87. In writing double counterpoint in the twelfth it will be best for the student to use the treble and bass voices for the counterpoint and its inversion, and to put the subject in either the alto or tenor—it is immaterial which. He must, of course, be careful not to exceed the compass of a twelfth between subject and counterpoint.

88. An important point to notice in this kind of counterpoint is, that the cadence must always be free. The reason for this will be evident with a moment's thought. A subject for strict counterpoint always ends on the tonic, and generally has the supertonic as the penultimate note. Let us take these two notes, and try to write either above or below them a cadence which will invert in the twelfth—

The image shows three staves of musical notation in C minor. The top staff is labeled (a) and contains four measures of music, each starting with a note labeled (a), (b), (c), or (d). The middle staff is labeled (b) and contains four measures of music, each starting with a note labeled (a), (b), (c), or (d). The bottom staff is labeled (c) and contains four measures of music, each starting with a note labeled (a), (b), (c), or (d). The notes are: (a) C4, (b) E4, (c) G4, (d) B4 in the upper part; and (a) C3, (b) E3, (c) G3, (d) B3 in the lower part.

The cadence at (*a*), which is that usually employed in simple counterpoint and in double counterpoint in the octave, is clearly out of the question here, not only because the sixth by inversion becomes a seventh, but because if the upper counterpoint ends on the tonic (whatever precedes it) its inversion must end on the subdominant. To end the upper counterpoint on the mediant, as at (*b*), is no better; for the inversion will end on the submediant. If, on the other hand, we write a good cadence in the bass, and attempt to invert it, we get a cadence which is simply atrocious in the treble, as at (*c*). In two-part writing, the student will remember, a third should not be followed by a fifth when both parts move by step, except in going from submediant to dominant (*Counterpoint*, § 157). The counterpoint against the last two notes of the subject will therefore always be free.

89. As double counterpoint in the twelfth is so much easier than that in the tenth, it will not be needful to write special subjects for working it, as we did in the last chapter. We shall, for the sake of comparison, take the same two subjects which in Chapter II. we employed for double counterpoint in the octave, and will give one major and one minor example in each of the five species.

90. As every exercise should commence with the tonic chord, unless the subject begins with the dominant, it is evident that our upper counterpoint should always have the fifth (or twelfth) of the subject for its first note; otherwise the inversion will begin on the subdominant or submediant. If the subject should happen to begin with the dominant, we can put either the fifth or octave above it; in the former case the lower counterpoint will commence with the dominant, and in the latter with the tonic.

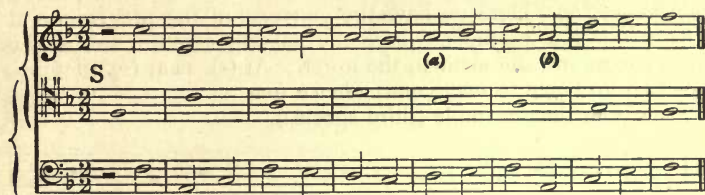
91. We will now give double counterpoints of the first species—

Subject (S): G4, A4, B4, C5, B4, A4, G4.
 Inversion (a): D3, E3, F3, G3, A3, B3, C4.

Subject (S): G4, A4, Bb4, C5, Bb4, A4, G4.
 Inversion (a): D3, Eb3, F3, G3, Ab3, Bb3, C4.

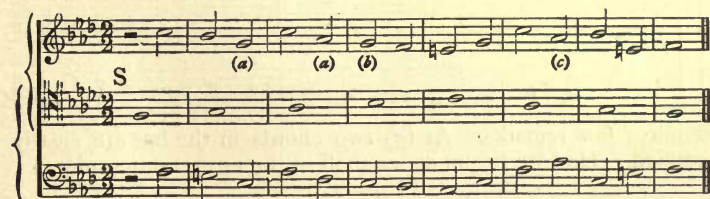
These counterpoints are so intelligible that we need only direct the student's attention to the free close at (a) in each, of which we spoke just now.

92. Counterpoint of the second species is mostly not very difficult in the twelfth. As with the octave and tenth, passing and auxiliary notes may be introduced, occasionally even on an accented beat, as in the following example—

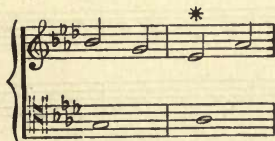


At (a) we have taken a seventh as an accented passing note in the upper part, which allows us to use a sixth as a harmony note in the bass. Let the student compare the introduction of the fifth as a harmony note in double counterpoint of the octave in the examples, §§ 44, 46. It is necessary to begin to make our cadence free at (b) in the third bar from the end. If the student will try, he will find no second note for this bar which can be properly inverted.

93. We next take our minor subject—



At (a) we have made on the unaccented notes of the second and third bars consecutive octaves with the subject. These should mostly be avoided, but here it was important to have A as the second minim of the third bar, and there was no other good note but G for the second minim of the second bar. The only way to avoid the octaves here would have been to introduce a transient modulation, by taking E flat as the first note of the third bar thus—



This would have saved the effect of octaves (see *Counterpoint*, § 175),

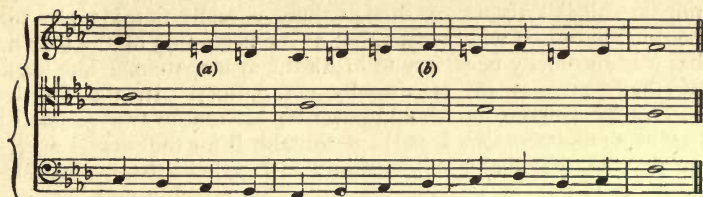
but as a modulation would have been unadvisable, we have preferred to allow ourselves a small license here. In the inversion there is no effect of consecutive fifths, because of the decided mental impression of two chords in the third bar. We were anxious to keep A in the third bar, so as to be able to introduce the sixth as a harmony note in the following bar in such a manner as that its inversion shall be an accented passing note—see (*b*). Here we have the converse of the progression at (*a*) in our last example, where the passing seventh was in the upper part, and the sixth in the lower. At (*c*), as at (*b*), of § 92 we have to begin to make our cadence free.

94. Our next example (third species)

requires few remarks. At (*a*) two chords in the bar are clearly implied. Had we begun as we shall in the next counterpoint,

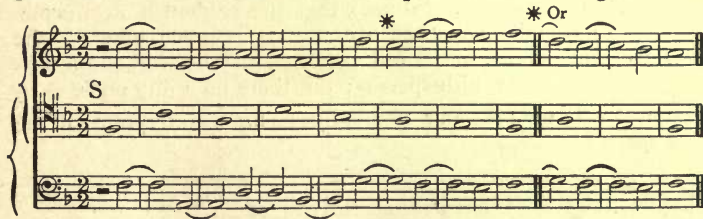
we should have consecutive fifths, and in the inversion consecutive octaves, by contrary motion. We need never hesitate about taking two chords in a bar, if we find it advisable. At (*b*) we are able to use the sixth again as a harmony note, because we can make its inversion in the bass as a passing seventh.

95. The only points to be noticed in our next example



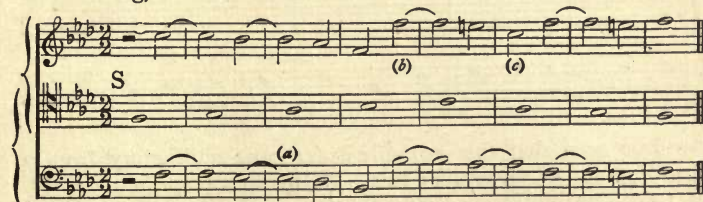
are that at (a) the descending form of the minor scale with the major sixth is used because the leading note is a harmony note; that at (b) we have the same treatment of the sixth as in the last example; and that at (c) we can equally well use the major and minor sixth and seventh of the scale.

96. The fourth species is mostly very troublesome in double counterpoint in the twelfth, because we are unable to employ one of the most useful of all the suspensions—viz., 7 6, as its inversion will evidently give 6 7 in the bass. The difficulties of this species will be illustrated in the examples we shall now give—



Until the counterpoint becomes free, at * it is impossible to obtain any conjunct motion against this subject, as the student will soon find if he tries it. At * it is best to break the syncopation. We have given an alternative version; but this is distinctly less good, first, because we have four consecutive thirds between the subject and the upper counterpoint, and secondly, because we end on the third of the key instead of the tonic, and our cadence contains no leading note.

97. Against our minor subject the counterpoint will be rather more flowing, but not much better.



Our progression for the first three bars is forced, but the effect of the fourth in the bass going to the fifth, at (a), can certainly

not be called satisfactory, though there is really nothing else to be done here. It will be seen that at the beginning of the fourth bar it is absolutely necessary to break the syncopation. The leap of the octave at (*b*) is virtually compulsory. In the fourth species the syncopation should never be broken for two consecutive bars (*Counterpoint*, § 263); if we take B for the second note, we get the unavailable suspension 7 6, besides a tritone in the inversion (§ 86); if we take the only other possible note, D, the inversion of the 9 8 suspension gives the 4 5 in the bass, which we were forced to take in the third bar, but which should be avoided wherever possible. At (*c*) we have again broken the suspension in the upper part, to avoid the weak close,



98. Taken altogether, the fourth species of double counterpoint in the twelfth is so unmanageable (to say nothing of its being of hardly any practical use), that the student is not recommended to spend much time over it. It is given here for the sake of completeness, and a few exercises may be worked on it as a preparation for the fifth species; but there its utility ends.

99. Lastly we take our two subjects for counterpoint of the fifth species—

It will be seen that this example is far more satisfactory, from a musical point of view, than those of the fourth species. At (*a*) we have apparently consecutive octaves in the upper part and consecutive fifths in the lower, with the first note (which is here a harmony note) of the second bar. Observe the way in which

they are saved by interposing two other notes of the harmony, both of which are *beyond* the first note of the third bar, so as to return by contrary motion. Such a procedure is often used in simple counterpoint to save *hidden* octaves and fifths (*Counterpoint*, § 178); we extend the principle here, so as to save actual consecutives. We must, however, add that it would have been bad to do this had not the first note in the second bar been a *tied* note, held on from the preceding chord, so that the note on the second crotchet has the character of the real harmony note of the bar. We have to begin our free cadence at (*b*), in the third bar from the end, as in the second and fourth species.

100. For our next example we transpose our subject to G minor, so as to keep our counterpoints in a better compass.

The musical score consists of two systems, each with three staves. The key signature is G minor (two flats) and the time signature is 4/4. The first system includes a soprano part labeled 'S'. The second system includes markings (a), (b), and (c) indicating specific harmonic and cadential points.

In this example we have illustrated at (*a*) the use of the sixth as a harmony note. It should be, as here, prepared *in the bass*; it must then continue to descend by step to the harmony note of the next chord. By comparing the upper and lower counterpoints in this bar, it will be seen that the harmony notes of the one become passing notes of the other, and *vice versa*. We have already met with something similar in the examples in §§ 44, 46, 92, and 93. At (*b*) we have used a sixth again in the upper part, as we did in the counterpoints of the third species (§§ 94, 95). This enables us to continue the inversion to the end of the bar, by using the form of cadence shown at (*c*). Had we taken the same cadence as in the last example, we must have broken the inversion in the middle of the third bar from the end.

101. The student may now proceed to work double counterpoint of the twelfth in the different species on any of the subjects

given at the end of Chapters II. and III., or on any of those contained in *Counterpoint*. When he has acquired a mastery of this kind of writing, he may congratulate himself that his labours in the domain of *strict* counterpoint are at an end. He will find double counterpoint in the free style comparatively easy, if he have prepared himself for it by a conscientious course of hard work at the preliminary and technical part. The fundamental principles to be borne in mind will be the same by which he has hitherto been guided, and with which he may reasonably be supposed to be now familiar; but the strict study he has been through will give him a command of free writing, without fear of his abusing his liberty, which, it may be confidently affirmed, can be obtained in no other way.

CHAPTER V.

FREE DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT IN THE OCTAVE, TENTH AND
TWELFTH, ON A CHORAL.

102. In writing double counterpoint, at whatever interval, in the free style, the student will have at his command (as with simple free counterpoint) all the resources of harmony. Chromatic chords may be introduced or implied; auxiliary notes may be taken by leap; in fact, all the additional freedom which was allowed in Chapters XIII. and XIV. of *Counterpoint* may be taken advantage of now. There is, however, one important difference to be borne in mind. All the exercises in simple counterpoint in the free style were in four parts. For the present our double counterpoint will be in two parts only; and for this reason, as the lower part has always to be considered as the bass, we must avoid the interval of a bare fourth between the two voices, unless it is used as a prepared suspension or a passing note. When we come, in a subsequent chapter, to treat of double counterpoint with added parts, we shall find it possible to employ the fourth more freely.

103. As the work on which we are now about to enter is in reality a species of actual composition, we are no longer restricted as to the length of our notes. It is therefore unnecessary to practise writing in any other than the fifth species; and in this we allow ourselves in one respect greater liberty than heretofore. In strict counterpoint it is rarely good, with the fifth species, to have two or more consecutive bars of the same pattern (*Counterpoint*, § 310). But we may now employ the same figure—especially sequentially—for several bars, if desirable, provided that the treatment does not become monotonous. It is no uncommon thing in the works of the great masters to find a double counterpoint constructed almost entirely on one pattern.

104. An important modification of our previous rules, and one that will greatly facilitate our work is, that in free double counterpoint dissonant notes may be sounded together, not only when (as in the strict style) one of them is an accented passing or auxiliary note, but also *when the two taken together clearly represent a fundamental discord*. Numberless illustrations of this might be given from the words of Bach; a couple will suffice here, both taken from his "Fifteen Inventions in two parts"—a work which contains some admirable examples of double counterpoint in two parts only.

105. In the first of these *Inventions* the opening bars are subsequently inverted thus—

J. S. BACH. *Inventio I.*

Bars 1, 2. (a) (b)

Bars 7, 8. (c) (d)

At (a) in the first bar an augmented fourth is sounded between the two parts, implying a third inversion of the dominant seventh. In the seventh bar the passage is inverted in the octave (or more strictly speaking, in the fifteenth), and at (c) the augmented fourth becomes a diminished fifth, which implies the first inversion of the dominant seventh. The first note of bar 8 is free, that is, it is not an inversion of the corresponding note of bar 2; but the second half of this bar is an inversion of bar 2 *in the twelfth*. The student will see this at once, by comparing the intervals at (b) and (d). The fifth at (b) becomes an octave at (d); $5 + 8 = 13$; the inversion is therefore in the twelfth (§ 8).

106. Now look at the dissonant notes in this passage. Against the second quaver of (b) a seventh (an accented passing note) is struck in the bass; this by inversion becomes a sixth—a harmony note (compare the progression at (b) in our example to § 93). The semiquavers C and A against the third quaver of (b) represent with the F above a chord of the sixth; in the inversion at (d) the fourth becomes a ninth, and the sixth becomes a seventh against the bass note, which is itself the auxiliary note here, the implied harmonic progression being

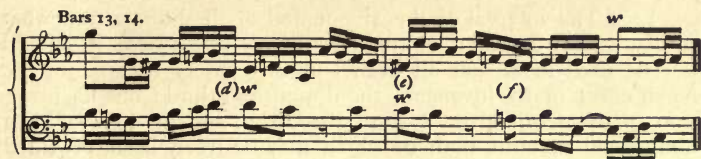
8 7
6 5
4 #

This example shows how possible it now becomes to use many progressions hitherto forbidden.

107. Our next illustration is taken from the same work—

J. S. BACH. *Inventio II.*

Bars 3, 4. (a) (b) (c)



Here the inversion is in the fifteenth throughout ; but, as this is virtually the same as the octave, we shall in future adopt the more usual name, and speak of such double counterpoint as being in the octave, unless there is any special reason for describing it otherwise. This example illustrates three different uses of dissonant notes. The seventh at (a) is a 7 6 suspension, inverting at (d) as 2 3 ; at (b) the dissonant fifth is a harmony note, and we have the first inversion of a dominant ninth ; the augmented fourth at (e) gives the third inversion of the same chord ; at (c) and (f) we see accented passing notes. The examples at (b) and (e) are those bearing more immediately on the point we are now discussing. Let it be also noticed that the passage just given exemplifies what was said at the end of § 103, the lower counterpoint being in semiquavers almost throughout.

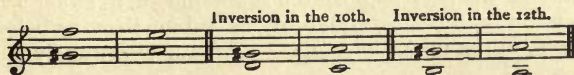
108. We must not, however, rush to the conclusion that *every* dissonance may now be freely used, if it can only be explained as part of a fundamental discord. It is needful also carefully to consider the resolution which is to follow. If, for example, we take the interval of the diminished seventh, and give it its ordinary resolution,



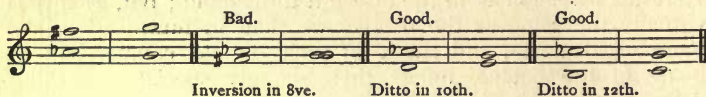
it is evident that if this be inverted in the octave, the perfect fifth will become a bare fourth, which we know (§ 102) is unallowable. If we employ a diminished seventh at all, we shall have to give it some other resolution ; *e.g.*—



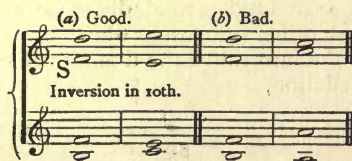
The student will see for himself the inversions of these passages. At the fourth crotchet of (a) we have taken a fourth as an accented passing note ; and the inversion of (b) will give a fourth as an unaccented passing note ; both these examples are quite correct. It must further be observed that the usual resolution of the diminished seventh, though unavailable for inversion in the octave, is quite practicable for either the tenth or the twelfth—



109. The interval of the augmented sixth shows a somewhat similar case. In double counterpoint of the octave it should not be used at all—at all events in two parts—because of the harsh effect of its inversion, the diminished third; but its inversion in the tenth gives a diminished fifth, and in the twelfth a diminished seventh, both of which may be freely used, provided they are properly resolved—



110. The admission of fundamental discords further lightens our labour in another way, especially with double counterpoint in the tenth and twelfth, by allowing us to use certain combinations which in strict counterpoint were unavailable because their inversions produced dissonances. For example, we saw in § 56 that in double counterpoint in the tenth we could not take a sixth above the subdominant, because its inversion gave us a diminished fifth. But in free counterpoint we can use this interval, *provided that the next note of the subject will allow us to resolve its inversion correctly*. An example will make this clear.



At (a) the diminished fifth in the inversion receives its proper resolution, at (b) it does not; the former progression is therefore good, the latter bad. In the same way, we may take a diminished fifth above the leading note in double counterpoint in the tenth (representing the first inversion of the dominant seventh), always provided that we can follow it properly.

111. Under similar limitations, we can employ some of the hitherto prohibited intervals in double counterpoint of the twelfth. A sixth can be used as a harmony note above either the subdominant, the tonic, or the submediant, because its inversion will give us in the first two cases the root position of either the dominant or supertonic seventh, and in the last the first inversion of the dominant ninth. For the same reason a sixth may be employed below the dominant, supertonic, or leading note; we can also take the octave above the subdominant, in either a major or minor key, and the octave above the submediant, or below the supertonic, in the minor key. But we cannot too strongly impress

on the student the fact that these intervals can in no case be used when their dissonant inversions cannot be properly resolved. With double counterpoint in the octave there will be no danger; because the inversion of a dissonance in the octave changes only the position, not the nature of the chord. With the tenth and twelfth, as we know, it is quite different.

112. The restrictions as to melodic progressions in double counterpoint of the tenth and twelfth (§§ 57, 58, 86) are still to be enforced, with the one exception, that it is occasionally possible in the free style to take an augmented second or an augmented fourth in the melody, when both notes are part of the same harmony. This, however, will very seldom be necessary, and the progression should be most sparingly used, if at all.

113. Free double counterpoint can be written either against a subject in notes mostly of equal length, such as a choral or hymn-tune; or two florid parts can be written in double counterpoint with one another. In actual composition the latter is by far the more common; but it will be best for the student to begin by practising double counterpoint on a choral. In doing this, he should always endeavour to make his counterpoint as flowing and melodious as he can, and remember that he is writing *music*, and not solving mathematical problems on intervals. We shall now give, as patterns, double counterpoints in the octave, tenth, and twelfth, on a well-known German choral.

114. We first write a double counterpoint in the octave—

The first system of notation is labeled (a) and 'S'. It consists of two staves. The upper staff contains a melody in G major (one sharp). The lower staff contains a counterpoint in the octave, with figured bass notation: 7 6, 6, 6, 6, 7 6, and a final cadence with a 2. The second system, labeled 'E', also consists of two staves. The upper staff continues the melody, and the lower staff continues the counterpoint with figured bass notation: 3 5, 6, 6, 6-7-6, 5, and a final cadence with a 5. Both systems include a grand staff bracket on the left.

(a)

(b)

(c)

(d)

As it is important to think of the implied harmony, it will be well for the student to figure his basses throughout, as we have done here. These counterpoints will repay close examination, though they require but few explanations. At (a) will be seen in the upper counterpoint an augmented fourth, and in the inversion a diminished fifth, both representing the dominant seventh of B minor. The transient modulation to the key of the relative minor is here of excellent effect. At (b) a sharp is put in brackets over the second quaver, G; this note can be either G \sharp or G \natural , according to the harmony intended. *As the basses are here figured*, we have an inverted cadence (*Counterpoint*, § 505) in B minor; in this case the G must be natural. But it would be also possible, though less good here, to regard the chord as the submediant of A major, not making a modulation to B minor at all; and in this case G, being an auxiliary note above the harmony note, would be sharp. At (c) and (d) we have indicated two chords as implied above the bass note, so as to avoid the bad harmonic progression IIa to Ia.

115. Double counterpoint in the tenth, though easier in the free style than in the strict, will be found considerably more difficult than that in the octave. We are, however, as has been shown above, much less restricted in our harmony, owing to our ability to use fundamental discords; and the permission given in § 59, to disregard implied root-progressions, must, therefore, now be withdrawn; for it will be quite impossible to write really good *musical* double counterpoint in the tenth unless we consider the harmony that is implied. We shall, therefore, for our next examples figure our basses, as we did with the last.

116. It must further be observed that we are now no longer absolutely debarred, as in the strict style, from the employment of similar motion; for we can now approach a third or a sixth by similar motion whenever its inversion will produce one of the allowed hidden fifths or octaves (*Harmony*, §§ 75-77).

117. We now give a double counterpoint in the tenth on the choral we are treating. It will be seen to furnish much more material for comment than that in the octave—

Example 115: Double counterpoint in the tenth. The score shows a vocal line (S) and a bass line. The bass line is figured with numbers 6, 6, (a), 6, 6, 6. The vocal line has a (b) marking above the fifth measure.

Example 116: Double counterpoint in the tenth. The score shows a vocal line and a bass line. The bass line is figured with numbers 6, 6, 6, 6, 6. The vocal line has (d) and (e) markings above the fourth and sixth measures respectively.

Example 117: Double counterpoint in the tenth. The score shows a vocal line and a bass line. The bass line is figured with numbers 7, 7, #6, 6, 6, 5, 2. The vocal line has (g) and (h) markings above the second and third measures respectively.

The musical score consists of two systems, each with two parts. The first system is labeled (k) and (l). The second system is labeled (m). Each system is written for two parts, with a treble and bass staff. The first system includes figured bass notation below the bass staff. The second system includes figured bass notation below the bass staff.

At (a) the progression from a third to a fifth, which is mostly bad in two parts moving by step, cannot well be avoided. It must be noticed that this double counterpoint is seldom used in two parts only ; as soon as a third part is added the bad effect disappears. At (b) we use the hitherto prohibited sixth above the subdominant, the inversion of which is a diminished fifth, because the next note of the subject allows us to resolve it correctly (§ 110). At (c) we meet with a case of frequent occurrence. Here we take the inversion in the key of B minor, while the upper counterpoint remains for four bars longer in the original key of D. It would have been possible, by the omission of the sharps to G and A, to keep the lower counterpoint in the key of D ; but this would have been far less satisfactory, because the harmony would have consisted almost entirely of the *weaker* chords of that key, II., III., and VI., whereas by going into B minor, we use all the *strong* chords, I., IV., and V. It may be laid down as a general principle that the larger the proportion of the three strong chords of the key (the tonic, subdominant, and dominant), the firmer and better the harmonic progression will be.

118. At (d) we save the approach of a sixth (becoming in the lower part a fifth), by similar motion, by going beyond the interval and then returning. It must be observed that it would have been quite possible here to approach this sixth by similar motion, had we desired it, because the hidden fifths in the lower parts are among those that are permitted. At (e) we take the sixth above the leading note, instead of the here possible diminished fifth (§ 110)

because its inversion gives us a stronger harmonic progression in the lower part.

119. The figuring of the bass at (*f*) should be particularly noticed. We have indicated the second inversion of the dominant eleventh, because this chord is much better than a plain chord of the sixth on the supertonic to precede the chord of the dominant seventh. Observe also at (*g*) how the third inversion of the dominant seventh in the upper part gives the root position of the same chord when inverted in the tenth below. At (*h*) we have taken the dissonant $G\sharp$ in the bass instead of $G\flat$, not only to avoid the augmented second, but to introduce the second inversion of the fundamental ninth on the supertonic, resolving it on the first inversion of the dominant seventh.

120. At (*i*) in the upper part we do not necessarily imply a doubled leading note. We may quite well consider the key of this bar to be A major, when the C sharp will be the doubled third of the tonic chord approached by step. At (*k*) we see the reverse procedure to that which we noticed at (*c*). Here the upper part modulates, while the lower remains in the original key. From (*l*) the first two lines of the choral are repeated. We have endeavoured here, as in the preceding counterpoint, to obtain as much variety of harmony and melody as possible. At (*m*) we make the cadence free in the bass, so as to get a better close.

121. Lastly, we write a double counterpoint in the twelfth against the same choral, and, in order to get more variety, we will take it in triple time—

The musical score is written for a double counterpoint in triple time. It consists of two systems of music. Each system features three staves: a vocal staff (labeled 'S') and two piano accompaniment staves (treble and bass). The key signature is two sharps (F# and C#), and the time signature is 3/4. The first system includes figured bass notation in the piano staves, with figures such as 6, 6, 6, 6, 6, 6, 7, and 6. The second system includes figured bass notation with figures like 6, 5, 4, 3, 5, 6, and 6. The vocal line is marked with 'S' and '(a)' in the first system, and '(b)' in the second system.

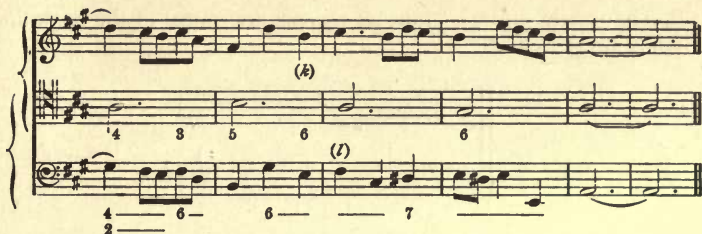
First system of musical notation (measures 1-3). The treble staff contains a melodic line. The bass staff contains a counter-melodic line with figured bass notation: (c) 6, 6, (d) 6, (e) 6. Below the bass staff are the figures 6, 5, 6, 5, 6, 5.

Second system of musical notation (measures 4-6). The treble staff continues the melody. The bass staff continues the counter-melody with figured bass notation: 6, #6, 6, 6, 6. Below the bass staff are the figures 6, #6, #6, 6, 6.

Third system of musical notation (measures 7-9). The treble staff continues the melody. The bass staff continues the counter-melody with figured bass notation: 6, 6, 6, 6, #6. Below the bass staff are the figures 8, 5, 2, 6.

Fourth system of musical notation (measures 10-12). The treble staff continues the melody. The bass staff continues the counter-melody with figured bass notation: (g) 5, #6, 6, 6, 6. Below the bass staff are the figures 6, #6, 4, 3, 7, 5, 6.

Fifth system of musical notation (measures 13-15). The treble staff continues the melody. The bass staff continues the counter-melody with figured bass notation: 6, 6, 5, 6, 6, 6. Below the bass staff are the figures 6, 4, 3, 6, 5, 2.



At (a) the sixth above the subdominant is taken as a harmony note (§ 111), its inversion in the bass giving a dominant seventh. As we happen to have approached it by step, it would be possible here to regard the E in the bass as an accented passing note; but it is far better to consider it as a genuine seventh; the harmonic progression is stronger. At (b) we indicate two chords in the bar to save the bad progression *IIa* to *Ia*; the same thing is seen two bars later.

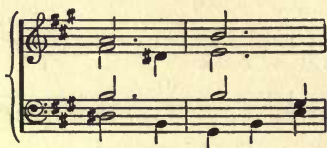
122. The progression of the bass at (c) requires careful attention. Evidently the last quaver must be a harmony note; for if we think of the submediant chord as being continued through the bar, D will be a second passing note returning in the following bar to the first one. If we here take $D\sharp$ instead of $D\sharp$, we shall have the false relation of the tritone; but by using the first inversion of the fundamental seventh on the supertonic, we get out of all our difficulties. We have marked the $\frac{6}{5}$ under the $D\sharp$ for the sake of clearness; but the harmony should of course change at the beginning of the third crotchet, the E being an accented passing note. In four parts we should fill up the harmony, thus—



That no modulation is implied to the key of E is, of course shown by the contradiction of the $D\sharp$ in the following bar.

123. At (d) is a somewhat, though not precisely, similar point. Here we are just going into the dominant key; if we take, $D\sharp$ here, we have the false relation of the tritone, and the effect is extremely harsh. As the preceding crotchet E is here a harmony note, it would be possible to consider D as an auxiliary note; but if we do this, it must still be *D sharp*, because it is below the fifth of the chord (*Harmony*, § 307). At (e) we see a diminished fifth in the bass, resulting from the inversion of the octave above the subdominant. The apparently free treatment of the dominant seventh here will be seen to be fully justified if we give

the harmonic outline, omitting the passing notes in the bass, and filling up the chords—

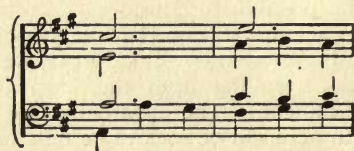


The chord of the seventh first changes its position; and the seventh rises because the bass moves to the note of its resolution (*Harmony* §§ 266, 240). We are intentionally introducing the progressions which were forbidden in the strict style, to show how to manage them properly.

124. The $\sharp 6_5$ marked in the bass at (*f*) is a parallel case to that which we have been examining at (*c*). The last quaver must imply a change of harmony, which (as before) should, of course, be taken at the third crotchet, $D\sharp$ being an accented passing note. The figuring here given represents the second inversion of the supertonic major ninth; we have taken this in preference to the submediant triad, as the latter might easily imply consecutive fifths in a middle voice with the following chord. Note also that in this passage, as in some places of our double counterpoint in the tenth, the two counterpoints are in different keys, the upper one being in $F\sharp$ minor, and the lower in E major. In all double counterpoints in the tenth and twelfth, we may freely introduce accidentals, if we thereby obtain better melodic or harmonic progressions.

125. After what has been already said, the student will readily see why at (*g*) we have marked $\sharp 6$ under B. In the bass the modulation back from B minor to A is made one bar sooner, at (*h*). Here we have, exceptionally, three chords implied in the bar. On the repetition of the first part of the subject, we have, as in our previous examples, varied the counterpoint.

126. At (*i*) will be found another sixth treated as a harmony note—not one of the sixths, be it noticed, which we have allowed in § 111. We have introduced this one to illustrate our general rule that any dissonance may be used in free counterpoint, provided it clearly represents a fundamental discord (§ 104). Here the seventh below the dominant represents the fourth inversion of the dominant major thirteenth. The full harmony of this and the preceding bar will be



At (*k*) two chords are indicated below B, as before, because the next chord is Ia; and, lastly, from (*l*) the cadence is free (§ 88).

127. The student will now be prepared to write double counterpoint for himself on hymn-tunes and chorals. He can take any familiar tune for treatment, or, if he prefer chorals, he will find a selection of fifty, which will be admirably adapted for his purpose in the author's *Additional Exercises to Counterpoint*. But he will do well to remember that it is not every subject that is adapted for double counterpoint in the tenth. The choral we have been treating proved very suitable, though it was not selected for that reason. What we may describe as an *undulating* melody—one that alternately rises and falls—will be the easiest to manage in the tenth. But any melody can be fitted with a double counterpoint in the octave or twelfth by dint of patience and perseverance. It will be excellent practice to write one of each kind of double counterpoint on the same subject, as we have done in this chapter; the student will thus obtain some insight into the almost inexhaustible resources of harmony.

CHAPTER VI.

FREE DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT ON A FLORID SUBJECT.

128. By the term "florid subject" is here meant any subject in which the notes are of no regular length, as distinguished from the chorals which have been treated of in the last chapter. We are not now restricting the word "florid" to the narrow sense in which it is frequently employed, as meaning rapid, or highly ornamented; but we are using it just as we do when we speak of the fifth species as "florid counterpoint." We have already said that this is by far the most common kind of counterpoint in actual composition; and we shall therefore in this chapter have the advantage of being able to draw our illustrations from the works of the great masters, instead of being obliged, as hitherto, to write all our own examples.

129. The general principles to be followed in writing this kind of double counterpoint are exactly the same as those which guide us in adding a double counterpoint to a choral; but there is one additional rule to be enforced, with which the student has already made acquaintance in working combined counterpoint. Let him remember the rule given in *Counterpoint*, § 407: "When two parts are in the fifth species, variety should be sought by taking longer notes in one of the parts against shorter notes in the other." To apply this rule in the present case, *the subject and counterpoint should be contrasted as much as possible, both in melody and rhythm.*

130. Double counterpoint in the octave is by far the most frequently employed and the most useful; next in order comes that in the twelfth, which is tolerably common. But double counterpoint in the tenth (probably owing to its difficulty) is extremely rare, and, excepting in pieces written expressly to illustrate it, is only to be met with incidentally, and generally for only a few notes.

131. The most frequent employment of double counterpoint of all kinds is in fugues, of which (as will be shown in the next volume of the present series) it forms one of the chief ingredients. But its utility is by no means restricted to this branch of composition. It frequently plays an important part in large instrumental works, such as symphonies and sonatas, and is even to be met with in vocal music which is not fugal. Illustrations of each kind will be given presently.

132. It will be most convenient to give first examples of double counterpoint in the octave, reserving those in the tenth and twelfth for a later part of the chapter; and we shall commence with some examples from the works of the greatest contrapuntist that the world has ever seen—Johann Sebastian Bach.

(1) J. S. BACH. "Wohltemperirtes Clavier," Fugue 30.

(2)

This passage requires hardly any explanation. At (2) we see the inversion, in a different key, of the passage at (1). By the simple rule given in § 8 it will at once be seen that the inversion is in the octave. Notice the contrast in rhythm and melody between the two subjects (§ 129).

133. Our next illustration

(1) J. S. BACH. Organ Fugue in C minor.

(2)

shows a case frequently met with. Here the inversion is not only in a different key, but in the major mode, instead of the minor. This evidently alters the character of the music, but the

intervals of inversion are still exactly maintained. It should be mentioned that at (2) the double counterpoint is in the two middle parts of a four-part harmony. We have not quoted the outer parts, as double counterpoint with added parts will be treated of in the next chapter.

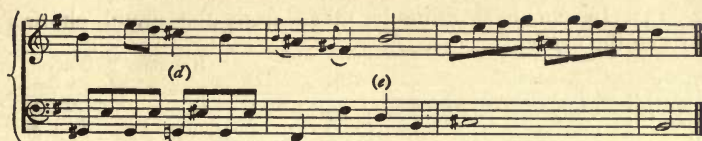
134. The following extract from the two-part fugue in E minor of the "Wohltemperirtes Clavier"

J. S. BACH. "Wohltemperirtes Clavier," Fugue 10.

illustrates some fresh points. Observe, first, that there is much less contrast in the character of the two subjects than in the examples hitherto given. This is because the fugue is a kind of *moto continuo*, a special feature of which is the persistence of the semiquavers from the first bar to the last. This passage also illustrates what was said in the last chapter (§ 104), as to the sounding of dissonant notes together. The semiquaver E in the first bar of the bass is clearly an auxiliary note; but at (a) are evidently notes of the chord of the dominant eleventh (second inversion), and at (b) we have the dominant seventh in the key of D. The third and fourth bars of this passage are the inversion, in the key of the dominant, of the first and second; and the augmented fourth at (c) represents the fourth inversion of the dominant eleventh in D.

135. A similar point is illustrated in our next example—

(1) J. S. BACH. Organ fugue in E minor.



Here the inversion is really in the twenty-second, or triple octave, the upper part being transposed two octaves lower, and at the same time the lower part an octave higher. But just as in harmony we speak of one note as being the octave of another, though it may be three or four octaves away, so we speak of double counterpoint in the octave, whatever the actual distance, if the relation of the two parts to one another harmonically is the same as if the transposition were really only one octave. (Compare §§ 13, 107.) At (a) in this example the augmented second represents the last inversion of a supertonic minor ninth, and the diminished fifth at (b) represents the second inversion of the augmented (French) sixth. In the inversion at (2) these two intervals give us at (c) and (d) the first inversion of the supertonic ninth, and the uninverted French sixth, thus exemplifying what we said in § 111—that the inversion of a dissonance in the octave changes only the position, and not the nature of a chord. At (e) two crotchets are substituted for four quavers for technical reasons; here the bass is played on the pedals, and Bach has simplified the passage, as he often does in such a case.

136. We shall give more examples from Bach when we come to deal with double counterpoint in the tenth and twelfth, and also with added parts; we will now take a few extracts from the works of Bach's greatest contemporary—Handel. Our first illustration



shows a very simple double counterpoint in the octave in the strict diatonic style. It is so straightforward as to require no explanation.

137. In our next example, taken from the grand chorus,
 "From the censer,"

HANDEL. "Solomon."

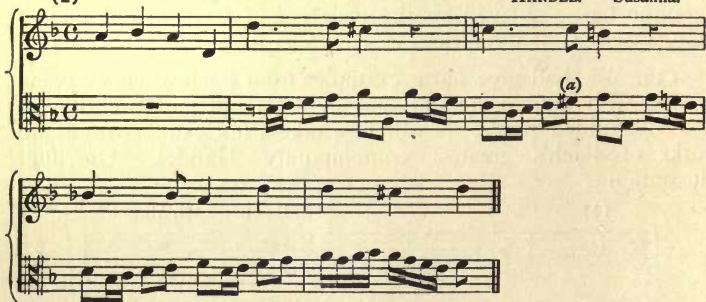


the two subjects are first announced by the alto and tenor voices, and immediately inverted by the soprano and bass, the former entering before the end of the subject. This passage illustrates at (a) the occasional possibility, in free writing, of the crossing of the parts for a moment. This, however, is a license which the student is not recommended to imitate.

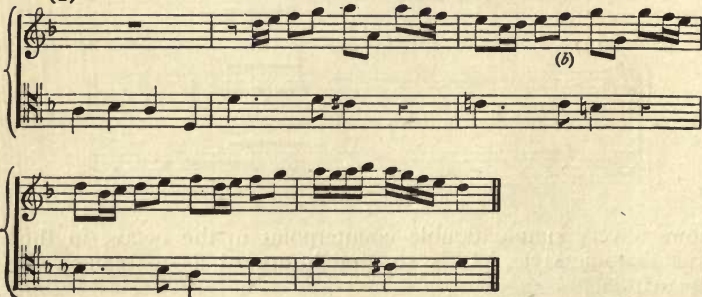
138. The following passage

(1)

HANDEL. "Susanna."



(2)



is given for the sake of comparison with the extract from Bach, quoted in § 132. In both cases, the most important feature is the descending chromatic scale. Notice what a different counterpoint is written against it by the two composers. At (a) will be seen a chromatic F \sharp in the alto, which in the inversion at (b) becomes F \natural . Such chromatic alterations, though by no means infrequent in double counterpoint of the tenth and twelfth, are rather rare when the inversion is in the octave.

139. The last example that we shall give from Handel

(1) HANDEL. Anthem, "O come, let us sing."

(2)

shows how to obtain variety by contrast of melody and rhythm when both subjects are in notes of comparatively slow time. The D \sharp at (a) of the inversion is another instance of the chromatic alteration of a note spoken of above. This will be often met with in Handel than in Bach.

140. With the older composers such double counterpoint as that which we have been quoting is mostly found in fugal writing. All the extracts we have given as yet have been from fugues, either instrumental or vocal. But in modern music the devices of double counterpoint are frequently used to impart additional interest to the development of the thematic material of a composition. Old "Father" Haydn, the founder of the modern school of instrumental writing, was one of the first to employ double counterpoint for this purpose; we give a few extracts from his works to illustrate the method of procedure.

141. One of his quartetts opens with the following subject—

In the second part of the movement the first notes of this theme are varied, and a double counterpoint in the octave added, thus—

Counterpoint. HAYDN. Quartett in F, Op. 74, No. 2.

Subject varied.

Inversion.

It will be seen that the fourth and fifth bars of this passage are the inversion of the first and second. We omit the middle parts of the harmony, as the progression of the outer voices is not affected by them.

142. In the example just given, a counterpoint in quavers is added to a subject in longer notes. Our next illustration will show the reverse process, a counterpoint of long notes being added to a subject in quavers. It is taken from the finale of Haydn's quartett in A, Op. 55, No. 1, the first theme of which is

In the course of the movement occurs the following passage, of which, for the sake of clearness, we give the score in full, numbering the bars for convenience of reference—

Viol. 1. HAYDN. Quartett in A, Op. 55, No. 1.

Viol. 2. *p* *mf*

Viola.

Violoncello. *mf*

1 2 3 4

5 6 7 8 9

10 11 12 13

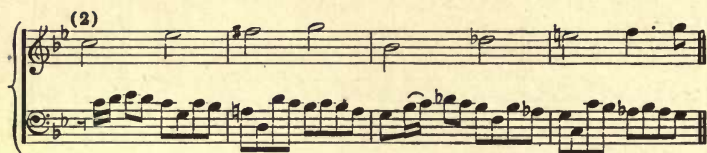
In bars 1 to 4 we see in the first violin a variation of the first theme, to which in the violoncello is added a counterpoint in semibreves and minims, the viola entering with a free part at the second bar. From bars 5 to 8 we find the inversion in the octave of bars 1 to 4. Note here that, in consequence of the close position of the two voices, the first part of the counterpoint does not undergo inversion. We see it strictly inverted by the viola and violoncello at bars 12 and 13. At bars 8 and 9 is a curious and interesting variation of the counterpoint. In the ninth bar the quaver figure which in bar 1 was used against the first bar of the counterpoint is employed against the second, and one bar of the continuation is consequently omitted. The whole passage is a beautiful example of the application of double counterpoint in practical composition.

143. The following passage from one of Haydn's earlier symphonies shows the employment of double counterpoint in a sequence—

(1) HAYDN, Symphony in G Minor.

f

F



As in previous examples, we have omitted the middle parts of the harmony.

144. Our last extract from Haydn is of an altogether different kind. It is the commencement of the slow movement of a symphony—

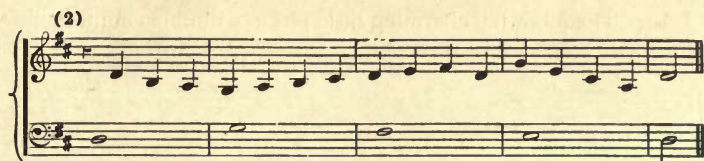
Andante. HAYDN. Symphony in D.

The first eight bars of this passage are in two-part harmony only, each part being doubled in the octave. At (a) the whole phrase is inverted, middle parts (not quoted) being added to fill up the harmonies.

145. Our first quotation from Mozart

MOZART. Fugue for Orchestra (Fragment).

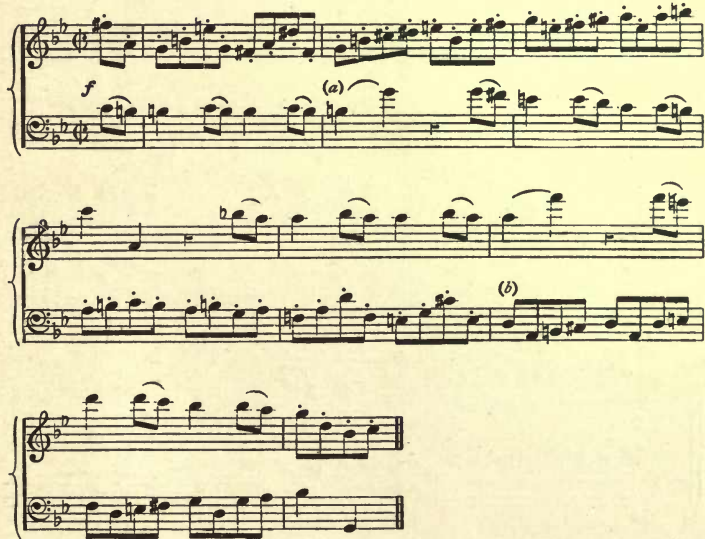
(1)



strikingly illustrates the difference between strict and free counterpoint. In the strict style, the consecutive octaves between the first notes of the first and second bars, and the arpeggio of the chord of the dominant seventh in the fourth bar would be objectionable. Here they are quite allowable.

146. Our next example

MOZART. Symphony in G minor.



shows a case of not infrequent occurrence. We have here a counterpoint written on the first subject of the movement; the subject (as many readers will be aware) is that given in the bass of the first four bars. If we compare (b) of the inversion with (a) of the original counterpoint we shall see that a slight change in the figure is here made. This is to keep the parts in a comfortable compass. Had the counterpoint at (b) been an exact imitation of (a) the bass would have been inconveniently high; on the other hand, the figure of (b) could not have been employed at (a) without crossing the parts. Such small modifications may always be allowed in free double counterpoint.

147. The following charming little piece of double counterpoint

MOZART.
Variations on "Unser dummer Pöbel meint."

The musical score consists of 16 numbered bars, arranged in five systems of two staves each. The key signature is one sharp (F#), and the time signature is 3/4. The first system contains bars 1-3, the second system bars 4-6, the third system bars 7-10, the fourth system bars 11-13, and the fifth system bars 14-16. The notation includes various rhythmic values, accidentals, and specific markings such as trills (tr) and accented auxiliary notes (appoggiature) in bars 10, 11, 12, and 15.

gives in the first four bars an example of free imitation, a subject to be dealt with later in this volume (Chapter X.). As in a previous example, we have numbered the bars. The inversion begins at bar 9. Compare the upper part of bars 6 and 7 with the bass of bars 14 and 15. At bar 14 we see bar 5 varied by the addition of accidentals (compare §§ 138, 139); and in bar 15 we find in the upper voice the bass of bar 7 with accented auxiliary notes (*appoggiature*).^{*} The eight and sixteen bars of this passage are free.

^{*} As we have not had occasion to use this word before, it may be well to remind the student that an *appoggiatura* (Italian—a "leaning note") is an accented auxiliary note placed at the distance of a second from a harmony note, and of not less than half its value.

148. The following example

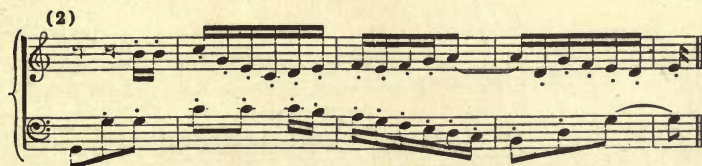
BEETHOVEN. Symphony in D, No. 2.



shows a different treatment of a sequence from that seen in § 143. Here the pattern is set in the first two bars, and inverted in the third and fourth; the whole passage is then repeated a tone lower.

149. Our next extract requires few words—

(1) BEETHOVEN. Quartett in C minor, Op. 18, No. 4.



The upper part of (1) shows the first subject of the slow movement, to which, on its resumption in the latter part of the piece the counterpoint here quoted is added.

150. It is comparatively seldom that a long passage of double counterpoint is to be found in a scherzo; the following is an excellent example—

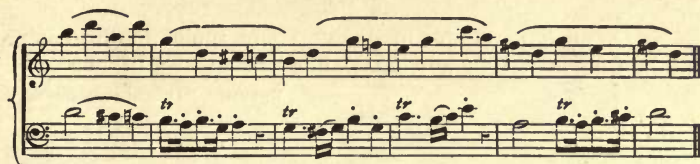
BEETHOVEN. Sonata, Op. 26.

The image shows four systems of musical notation for Beethoven's Sonata, Op. 26. Each system consists of a treble staff and a bass staff. The first system is marked with (a) and *sf*. The second system is marked with (a) and *sf*. The third system is marked with *f* and (b). The fourth system is marked with (b) and *sf*. The notation includes various musical symbols such as notes, rests, and dynamic markings.

Notice at (b) the alteration of one note of the subject at (a).

151. A charming combination of two melodies strongly contrasted in character is to be seen in the following extract from the first movement of Cherubini's second string quartett—

The image shows two systems of musical notation for Cherubini's Quartett in C. Each system consists of a treble staff and a bass staff. The first system is marked with (1) *tr*, *tr*, *tr*, *tr*, and *p*. The second system is marked with (2) and *tr*. The notation includes various musical symbols such as notes, rests, and dynamic markings.



As before, we omit the middle parts of the harmony.

152. Among the composers of the first half of the present century Mendelssohn and Schumann were probably the greatest contrapuntists. It is seldom, nevertheless, that we find double counterpoint developed at any great length in their works, especially in those of Schumann. We give two examples from Mendelssohn, totally differing from one another in character—



The overture to "St. Paul," from which the above passage is taken, is in the contrapuntal style throughout; but there are not many bars which are *strictly* inverted. Even in this extract it will be noticed that the last group of semiquavers is free, and the inversion only lasts for a little more than two bars.

153. Every one who has heard the "Scotch" symphony will remember the beautiful effect produced in the first movement by the combination of two of the chief themes.

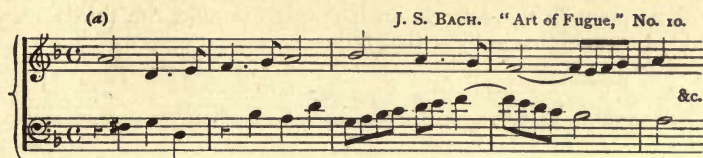


154. Our last example of double counterpoint in the octave will be from a work by a living composer, Johannes Brahms—

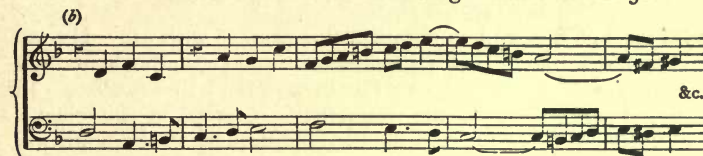
BRAHMS. "Deutsches Requiem."

This fine passage illustrates the tendency of the modern school toward freedom in contrapuntal writing. It will be seen that in the second bar of this extract, the fifth crotchet, at (a) is altered in the inversion at (b). (Compare § 150.) The last bar of the passage, also, though maintaining a general resemblance, is not a strict inversion at (2) of the model. It is difficult to give a satisfactory reason why any change should have been made here; but it may be said, once for all, that in modern compositions good specimens of strictly inverted double counterpoint are far more rarely to be met with than in the works of the old masters.

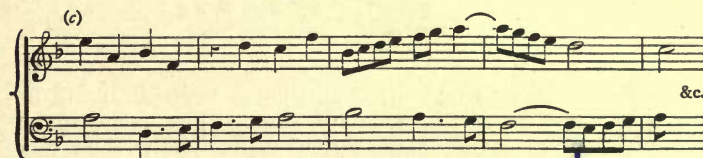
155. We have several times noticed the rarity of the employment of double counterpoint in the tenth, as compared with those in the octave and twelfth. In the whole of Bach's "Forty-Eight Preludes and Fugues" it is very seldom met with, *e.g.*, in fugues Nos. 29, 40, and 45; though double counterpoint in the twelfth is tolerably frequent, and that in the octave is to be found in every fugue. In our first chapter we quoted passages from two of the fugues we have named (§§ 9, 11); we will therefore give for our present illustrations some extracts from Bach's "Art of Fugue," the tenth number of which is specially written to exemplify double counterpoint in the tenth, of which it is probably the finest specimen ever composed. The two subjects to be combined are in the first instance worked separately, and are not found together until the 44th bar, when they appear thus—



We first see them inverted in the following manner in bar 52—

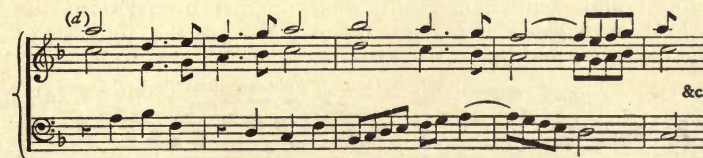


The alteration of the first note in this passage is necessitated by the laws of fugal construction. If the student will compare these two examples, he will see, with the guidance given him in §§ 8, 9, that the inversion here is in the tenth. The next inversion (bar 66) will make this even clearer—



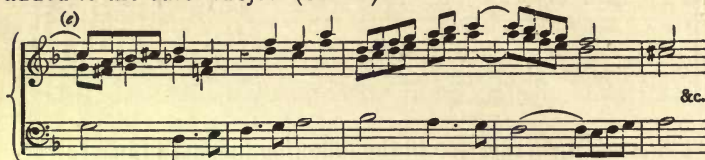
By comparing (c) with (a) it will be seen that the lower part of (c) is the upper part of (a), an octave lower; while the upper part of (c) is the lower part of (a), a tenth higher.

156. When treating of double counterpoint in the tenth, we mentioned (§ 80) that it differed from all other kinds, in the fact that it could be used simultaneously in two parts, which would move in thirds, sixths, or tenths, according to their positions. Our next extracts will illustrate this (bar 75)—



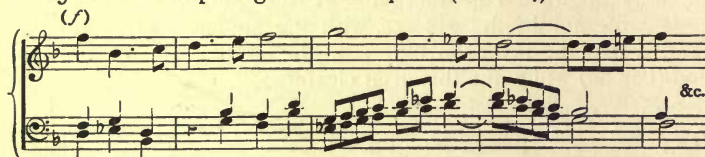
Compare this with (c), and we shall observe that the two outside parts are inverted in the octave, and therefore in the tenth of the original model at (a). The middle part makes with the bass exactly the same intervals which the two parts made at (a); and were it inverted with the bass, we should have double

counterpoint in the *octave*. In our next example, the thirds are added to the other subject (bar 86)—



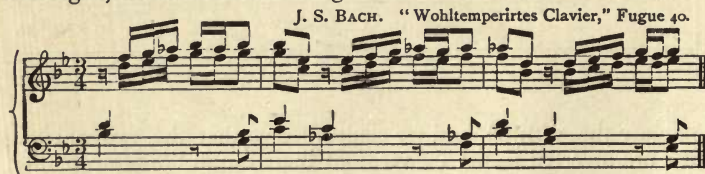
157. Let the student compare this passage with (a). He will see that the middle voice gives the inversion in the tenth, and the thirds above it now give the inversion in the *twelfth*. In example (d) the added part would have inverted in the octave. Thirds or sixths added to a double counterpoint in the tenth will produce double counterpoint in the octave or twelfth, according to the position.

158. The last passage we shall quote (bar 104)—



shows the inversion of (e). By comparing it with (a), it will be seen that here, as at (d), we have simultaneous counterpoint in the tenth and octave. These various counterpoints show how both the subjects can be transposed. It will be remembered that in § 79 the student was told not to transpose his *canto fermo*; but when, as here, the two parts are of equal importance, it is possible, as we see, to transpose either of them.

159. It will be noticed that in none of the passages we have given are the thirds or sixths added to both subjects at once. This, however, would have been possible, and is not infrequently done. An excellent example of this will be seen in the great fugue, in G minor, of the "Wohltemperirtes Clavier." The subject and counterpoint, with their original inversion in the octave, were given at (a) and (b) of § 10. At the 59th bar of the fugue, we find the following—



Here thirds are added both to the subject and counter-subject. By comparing the voices with those of the model in § 10,

we shall see that we have simultaneously double counterpoint in the octave between the alto and tenor, in the tenth between soprano and tenor and alto and bass, and in the twelfth between soprano and bass. Such thirds can be added to any double counterpoint in the octave, provided that similar motion and an unprepared sixth are avoided, the former being, as we know, unavailable in double counterpoint in the tenth, and the latter in the twelfth.

160. In the third volume of Albrechtsberger's theoretical works will be found two fugues written in double counterpoint in the tenth; but as extracts from these would show little or nothing which has not been already illustrated in the examples we have just given from Bach, we content ourselves with referring students to Albrechtsberger's treatise. We will now give a few passages in which double counterpoint in the tenth is incidentally used. These will mostly be very short, as it is but seldom that an opportunity occurs for the employment of this device.

161. Handel scarcely ever writes double counterpoint at this interval. A fragment, of only half a bar's length, will be seen in the following passage—

HANDEL. Anthem, "Have mercy upon me, O God."

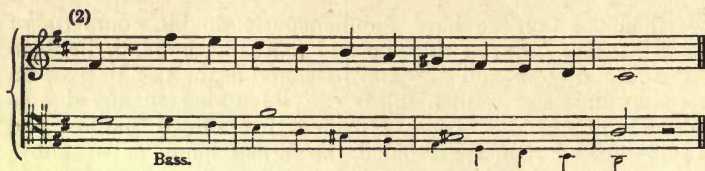
The musical score is for Handel's Anthem, "Have mercy upon me, O God." It is in G major, 3/4 time. The first system shows the Soprano, Alto, and Tenor parts. The Soprano part has a half rest, while the Alto and Tenor parts have a half note G. The second system shows the Soprano, Alto, and Tenor parts. The Soprano part has a half note G, while the Alto and Tenor parts have a half note G. The Alto part is marked (a) and the Tenor part is marked (b).

At (b) is shown the inversion in the tenth of (a).

162. Our next example shows how double counterpoint in the tenth can be obtained by adding thirds or tenths to that in the octave—

(1) JOMELLI. Mass in D.

The musical score is for Jomelli's Mass in D. It is in D major, 4/4 time. The first system shows the Soprano and Bass parts. The Soprano part has a half note D, while the Bass part has a half note D. The second system shows the Soprano and Bass parts. The Soprano part has a half note D, while the Bass part has a half note D.



Here the regular double counterpoint of the fugue is, as usual, in the octave. This inversion is shown in the small notes of (2); but the bass is here accompanied by the treble in tenths, the latter thus giving double counterpoint in the tenth against the subject.

163. In the following passage,

(1) HAYDN. Mass, No. 12.

(2)

the two subjects are mostly worked in the octave; but an incidental double counterpoint in the tenth is introduced, as shown at (2). If the student will examine these two subjects, he will see that they would also be capable of inversion in the twelfth.

164. In instrumental music, double counterpoint in the tenth is even rarer than in vocal. We give a very short specimen by Mozart—

(1) MOZART. Sonata in D.

(2)

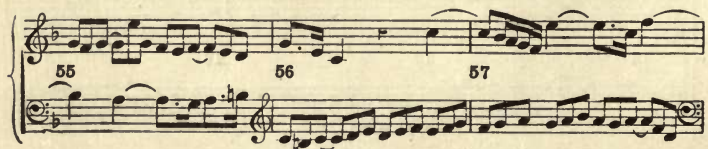
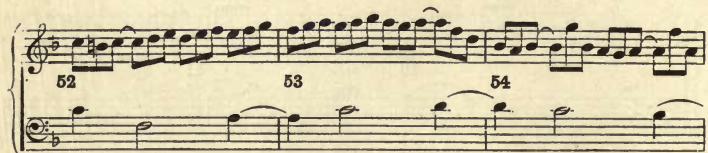
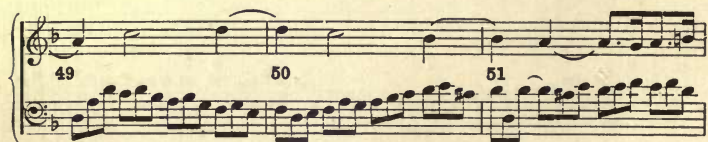
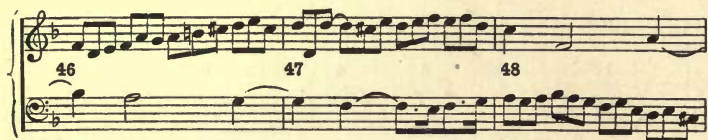
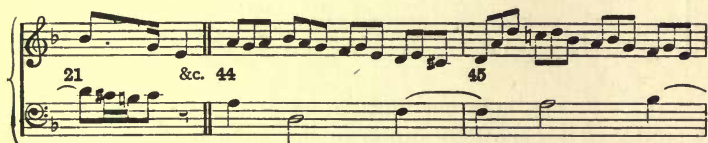
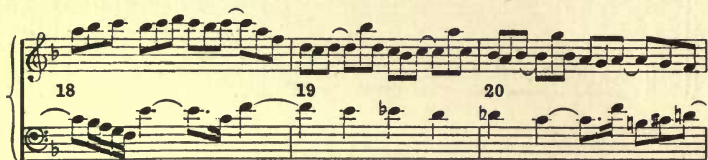
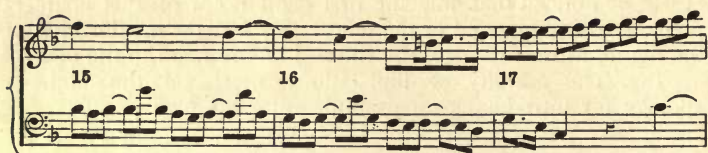
It will be noticed that only the first eight notes of this counterpoint are really inverted in the tenth. By a slight modification of the figure, Mozart changes the interval of inversion to the octave.

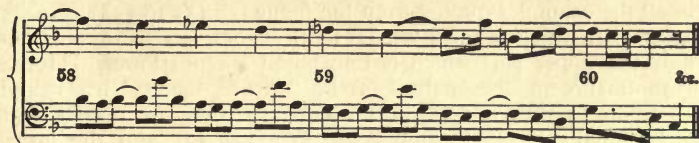
165. The scarcity of illustrations must be the author's apology for introducing an example from his own pen—

E. PROUT. Symphony in D, No. 4.

166. We conclude our illustrations of this counterpoint with a portion of the masterly canon in the tenth in Bach's "Art of Fugue"—

J. S. BACH. "Art of Fugue."

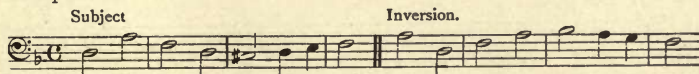




This wonderful movement is too long to quote in full ; but a somewhat extended extract is required to make it intelligible. We number the bars for the sake of reference. The subject of canon will be spoken of later in this volume ; it will suffice now to say that a canon is a composition in which one part continuously imitates another at any given interval. In the present case it will be seen that the upper voice imitates the lower at a distance of four bars, and at the interval of a tenth above. We give only the first half of the canon, which is continued strictly to the 39th bar. From the 44th bar to the end of the piece, with the exception of the last four bars, which are free, the whole canon is inverted in double counterpoint of the tenth.

167. Let the student first examine the model, bars 5 to 21. The counterpoint begins at bar 5, and it will be seen that in the harmony considerable prominence is given to the intervals of the fifth and sixth, which in the inversion become respectively the sixth and fifth. Observe that in the exposition, so to speak, of the canon, Bach, at bars 9 to 12, inverts bars 5 to 8 in the tenth. In bar 18, at the second crotchet, is a diminished fifth struck by the two parts. This is because it clearly represents the first inversion of a dominant seventh (§ 104). In bars 13 and 14 will be seen sixths approached by similar motion, from accent to accent ; the inversion produces hidden fifths (bars 52, 53). Though these would be objectionable in strict counterpoint, they may be allowed in free, especially in double counterpoint in the tenth, in accordance with the often mentioned general principle, that in proportion as the difficulty of the task increases, the strictness of the rules in less important points is relaxed. Similar hidden fifths will be seen in the example to § 165.

168. Now let us look at the inversion, bars 44 to 60. If we compare the commencement of the canon (bars 1 to 4) with the upper of the two subjects of the fugue given in § 155, we shall see that the former is a variation of the latter. Both are, in fact, varied forms of the *canto fermo*, on which, either direct or by inverse movement, the whole of the "Art of Fugue" is composed.



In the canon, as in the fugue, it is the inverted form of the subject which is taken for treatment ; but it will be noticed that

in all the examples quoted from the fugue (§§ 155 to 158), it is the lower part which is transposed a tenth higher, while in the canon it is the upper part which is transposed a tenth lower. Moritz Hauptmann, in his Analysis of the "Art of Fugue," has called attention to this, and given, undoubtedly, the true reason, that the original subject (the upper part at § 155 (a), and the lower part in the canon) is really the *canto fermo*, which therefore must not be transposed (§ 79). At bars 48 to 51, we see again the inversion in the tenth of the four preceding bars, with the curious result that bars 48 to 51 are identical with bars 5 to 8 of the model. The whole of this extract deserves close examination, comparing the inversion bar by bar with the model.

169. Double counterpoint in the twelfth, though somewhat less rare than that in the tenth, is yet far from common, especially with modern writers. The examples now to be given will sufficiently illustrate its practical use—

(1) Bars 5, 6. BACH. "Wohltemperirtes Clavier," Fugue 2.

(2) Bars 17, 18.

In the inversion, we have added the upper voice, which is in thirds with the bass, because it does not obscure the clearness of the counterpoint. Notice at (a) and (b) sixths in the pattern, the inversions of which at (c) and (d) become fundamental sevenths, and compare §§ 104, 111.

170. Our next illustration is very similar in character—

(1) Bars 48, 49. BACH. "Wohltemperirtes Clavier," Fugue 28.

(2) Bars 55, 56.

Here, again, the sixth can be taken at (a), because the inversion at (b) gives us the dominant seventh on C \sharp .

171. The following passage

(1) Bars 27—30. BACH. "Wohltemperirtes Clavier," Fugue 47.

(2) Bars 42—45.

shows how the inversion in the third bar produces a modulation to the key of the relative minor. Similar cases were seen in the counterpoints on a choral in the tenth and twelfth which we gave in the last chapter.

172. Our next example is taken from the fugue, written by Bach, in his "Art of Fugue," expressly to illustrate double counterpoint in the twelfth—

(1) BACH. "Art of Fugue," No. 9.

(2)

G

At (1) we see in the upper voice the *direct* form of the subject quoted in § 168, the inversion of which was used for double counterpoint in the tenth. At (2) is the inversion of the counterpoint in the twelfth. Compare (a) with (c), and (b) with (d), and notice particularly the alterations in the position of the semitones. Had the scale passage at (a) been exactly imitated at (b), there would have been a modulation to the key of A minor, which Bach did not wish. Such chromatic alterations of notes will be more often met with in a minor than in a major counterpoint. In the last three bars of this example, where the music modulates to the key of the relative major, the only note altered in the inversion is the leading note (§ 84).

173. The following passage, taken from one of Handel's "Chandos Anthems,"

HANDEL. Anthem, "My song shall be alway."

(1)
(2)

exemplifies a somewhat different point. Here the inversion begins in the twelfth. The sixth above the subject at (a) becomes in the inversion, not a fundamental seventh, as in the examples to §§ 169, 170, but an accented passing note (§ 85). Observe that at (b), in the third bar, further inversion in the twelfth becomes impracticable; the rest of the passage, from (d), is therefore inverted in the octave.

174. Sometimes more than one part may be inverted at once—

HANDEL. "Jephtha."

(1)

In this example, we have at (2) omitted the tenor part, which is free, to show the inversions more clearly. The subject, which at (1) is in the treble, is at (2) in the bass. The alto, which at (1)

began on the fifth below the subject, begins at (2) on the octave above, and it is therefore inverted in the twelfth. At the same time the tenor, which in the model began on the tenth below the subject, begins (now in the treble) in the inversion on the tenth (= the third) above, and is therefore likewise in double counterpoint in the twelfth.

175. The double fugue in Mozart's "Requiem" has probably been quoted in every book on double counterpoint published since it was composed. It is, nevertheless, too fine an example to be omitted here—

(1) MOZART. "Requiem."

(2)

(3)

The two themes announced at (1) are first inverted in the octave, as at (2), and subsequently in the twelfth, as at (3). Notice how, as in previous examples, the inversion of a sixth becomes a dominant seventh. We omit, as in many other examples, the accompanying parts.

176. Double counterpoint in the twelfth is not very frequently employed by Beethoven. The following example will require no explanation—

BEETHOVEN. Sonata, Op. 110.

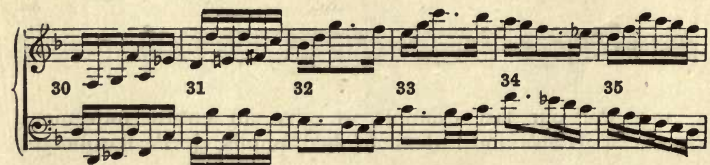
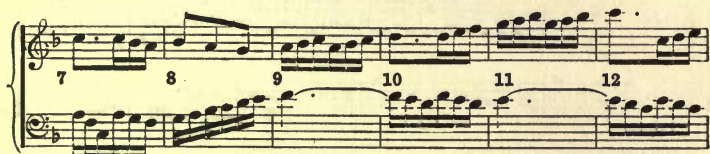
(1) Bar 4. (2) Bar 19.

&c. &c.

177. For our last example we give an entire movement, by one of Bach's most distinguished pupils, J. P. Kirnberger,

which is written throughout (excepting the free close, four bars in length) in double counterpoint in the twelfth. This very fine specimen is taken from Clementi's "Practical Harmony"—

J. P. KIRNBERGER.



Inversion in the 12th.

36 1 2 3 4 5

6 7 8 9 10 11

12 13 14 15 16 17

18 19 20 21 22 23

24 25 26 27 28 29

30 31 32 33 34

35 36 37 38 39 40

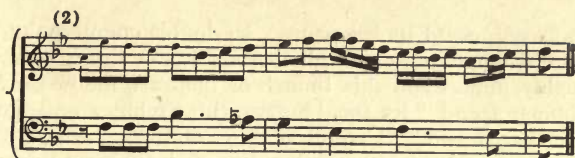
That the student may the more readily compare the inversion with the model, we have numbered the bars in both, from 1 to 36. The bars at the end, from 37 to 40, give the free close, which (§ 88) is always a necessity with this counterpoint.

178. This example illustrates nearly all the rules we have given for double counterpoint in the twelfth. Observe that it begins with the interval of the octave—not with the fifth, as we have done in our examples. This is because the *upper* part is considered as the subject, and the lower as the counterpoint. This is clearly shown by the inversion, in which the lower part is transposed a twelfth higher, and not the upper part a twelfth lower. Notice also the great prominence given to the interval of the third, not only on the accented notes of the bar, but in successions of thirds (bars 17, 18, and 29 to 31). At bars 9 to 14 will be seen a good example of the sixth as a harmony note, prepared in the lower voice (§ 100), which in the inversion becomes a regularly prepared seventh. It will be seen that accidentals are freely used in the inversion (§ 124), if the melodic or harmonic progressions are thereby improved, as, for instance, in bars 29 to 31. The smooth flow of the whole counterpoint, in spite of the restrictions under which it is written, shows the composer to have been a worthy pupil of his illustrious master.

179. There is a spurious kind of double counterpoint, frequently to be found even in the works of the great masters, which must not be confounded with that which we are now treating of. It is not uncommon to meet with a theme accompanied by a more or less elaborate counterpoint above it (or below it, as the case may be), and then to find the theme accompanied in the reverse position by another counterpoint, bearing a general resemblance to the first, but not identical with it. Such counterpoint may be described as “electroplated” double counterpoint—very useful, often even artistic and beautiful; but after all only an inferior substitute for the genuine metal. It is naturally far easier to write, and very often for all practical purposes quite as effective; but it must be taken for what it really is—counterpoint—*good* counterpoint, in most cases, but not *double* counterpoint.

180. That we may not be suspected of intending to disparage the counterpoint of which we are now speaking, we give two excellent examples of it—

(1) HAYDN. “Creation.”



It will be seen that the counterpoint of the second bar of (2) is not an inversion of the corresponding bar of the model, though it sounds sufficiently like it to be mistaken for it by a casual hearer. It is quite as effective as the real inversion would be—perhaps even more so; and Haydn, doubtless, had good reasons for making the alteration, since nobody could write better double counterpoint than he when he chose.

181. Our second example is from Mendelssohn, indisputably one of the finest contrapuntists of the present century—

Viol. 1. MENDELSSOHN. 4th Symphony.

Viol. 2.

Here the figures of quavers, playing round the subject, are equally effective and charming in the first and second violins; but they are not identical. It will be seen that each time the melody is above the counterpoint; we have, nevertheless, quoted the passage, because, as the student will easily see, both phrases are really written in double counterpoint in the octave, though neither is strictly inverted in the course of the movement.

182. It will be seen that nearly the whole of this long chapter is taken up with the analysis of examples. The resources of double counterpoint are so exhaustless that it is quite impossible to lay down precise rules as to every point that may occur. All that can be done is to indicate the general principles which should guide the student in writing, and to inculcate their observance by showing the practice of the great composers. Experience will do the rest. We have here taken but a few gleanings from the ample field of musical literature; he who will take the trouble to explore it more thoroughly will

reap a large reward for his pains. In double counterpoint, Bach is the unrivalled master of all masters. Let those who would thoroughly understand this branch of their art, follow the advice of Schumann, and "let the 'Forty-eight Preludes and Fugues' be their daily bread." Careful analysis of these works will teach the earnest student far more than he can learn from this, or any similar book.

183. The student should now begin to write free counterpoint in the octave, tenth, and twelfth for himself. If he can, it will be best for him to invent both melodies ; but if he at first feels himself unequal to this, he will find a selection of subjects which will serve his purpose in the third and fifth sections of Part I. of the author's "*Additional Exercises to Counterpoint.*"

CHAPTER VII.

DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT WITH FREE PARTS ADDED.

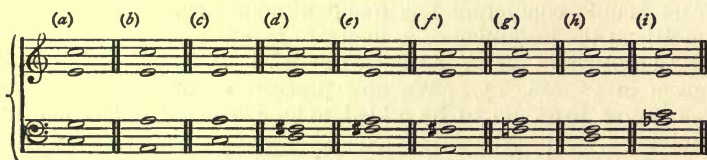
184. We have frequently referred to the addition of other parts to two parts which were written in double counterpoint; and in many of the examples given in the last chapter we have said that such parts were in the original, though they are omitted in our illustrations for the sake of showing the double counterpoints themselves more clearly. As a matter of fact, by far the larger number of double counterpoints are accompanied by what are called "free" parts, that is, by parts written only in simple, not in double, counterpoint with the others. When actual two-part double counterpoint is found without such additions, it is mostly at the beginning of a fugue, or in old music intended for the harpsichord, as in the examples from Bach and Kirnberger given in §§ 166, 177. We now proceed to show how one or more free parts are to be added to an existing double counterpoint.

185. The task now before the student differs from those which have hitherto engaged his attention in one important respect. In all the counterpoint he has yet worked, whether simple or double, he has always had one given subject to which to add one or more parts. Now, however, the two voices of the double counterpoint may be regarded as two *canti fermi*, to which one or more florid counterpoints have to be added. His work will now be very similar to that which he has had in some of the varieties of combined florid counterpoint.

186. It will be seen at once that the fact of there being two given subjects instead of one considerably limits the choice of harmony. In his very first attempts at counterpoint the student was told (*Counterpoint*, § 62) to consider the harmonic possibilities of each note of his subject. Thus, in the key of C, the note C may be the root of the tonic, the third of the submediant, or the fifth of the subdominant triads. As we are now dealing with free counterpoint, the same note may also be the seventh of the fundamental discord on the supertonic, or the eleventh of the chord of the dominant eleventh. Similarly F may be the root of the subdominant chord, the third of the diatonic triad on the supertonic, or the seventh of the dominant. But if the two notes of the double counterpoint, which are sounded together are F and C, several of the chords just named are at once

excluded. We can neither take the tonic nor submediant triads, nor the fundamental seventh on the supertonic, because F is not a note of any of these chords. So also, C does not belong to the triad on the supertonic, nor the chord of the dominant seventh. With these two notes given, we are therefore practically restricted to the subdominant triad or some position of the chord of the dominant eleventh as our only available harmonies.

187. It is from such limitations as these that the student's chief difficulties will arise, especially when he is adding a new bass below both the given parts. But in this case he must be careful not to hamper himself needlessly. Supposing, for example, that the two notes of his double counterpoint in the key of C, are E and C, making a sixth between them, and that he is going to add a bass, or perhaps a tenor and bass below them. The notes given suggest, of course, the first inversion of the tonic chord; but it would be a great mistake for the student to imagine that the tonic harmony is the only one possible. The following example will soon convince him of this. We give the sixth in the upper parts, and add a tenor and bass below—



188. At (a) we give the tonic chord, as that which would naturally occur first to the student. This might also be taken in the first inversion, and even in the second, if the context allowed of its proper treatment. At (b) and (c) are the root position and first inversion of the submediant triad. All these positions can be used freely, and there would be little or no difficulty about their introduction. But it would be also possible to treat the given notes, under certain circumstances, as parts of fundamental discords. At (d) (e) and (f) are shown various positions of the supertonic major ninth. These, of course, would be only available if the seventh and ninth could be properly resolved, and the third of the supertonic chord were able to move a semitone (*Harmony*, § 474). At (g) and (h) are shown two positions of the dominant thirteenth, and at (i) the tonic minor thirteenth, any one of which would be at least possible. It will be seen that here are nine combinations of which the notes C and E could form a part, and this list is not exhaustive. The student's resources, therefore, are not so limited after all as would appear at first sight.

189. A very important consideration will always be, which notes of the subject are to be treated as harmony notes, and

which as auxiliary or passing notes? It is impossible to lay down any absolute rules on this point; experience will be the student's best guide; but he must remember that he is now not restricted to one chord in a bar, or even to one chord against each note of his subject. He may change his harmony as often as he finds it expedient; and it will frequently happen that the interposition of a second chord will save a weak or bad root-progression.

190. It must also be borne in mind that we can now treat any note, accented or unaccented, whether approached by step or by leap, as an auxiliary note, *provided it is quitted by step*. In many cases this permission will be found extremely useful. The rule prohibiting the sounding of dissonant notes together, except when taken by step, is also to a very considerable extent relaxed; though judgment will need to be exercised in this matter, so as to avoid harshness as much as possible.

191. We shall now give a series of examples, to illustrate the principles we have laid down; from the careful analysis of these the student will, it is hoped, learn all that it will be needful for him to know. Following our usual method, we will take one short subject, and treat it in many different ways. For this purpose we will choose the first eight bars of the double counterpoint in the octave which we worked on a choral in § 114.

192. We will first add a free middle part to the counterpoint. In order to do this, it will be necessary to transpose the lower voice an octave, to make room—

The image contains two musical examples, 191 and 192, each consisting of three staves. The top and bottom staves are in treble and bass clefs respectively, with a key signature of one sharp (F#) and a 4/4 time signature. The middle staff is labeled "D. C." (Double Counterpoint). Example 192 (top) includes a label "(a)" above the middle staff. Example 191 (bottom) includes a label "(b)" below the middle staff.

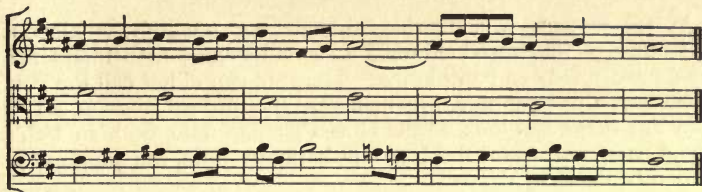
In all our examples we shall indicate by a "D. C." the two parts which are in double counterpoint with one another. We

choose an added middle part for our first example, as being on the whole the easiest to work. The only remarks to make upon this example are, that at (a) there are not consecutive octaves between treble and alto, because the crotchet A is a note of the harmony; and that at (b) two chords are used on the bass note.

193. We now take the double counterpoint in the two lower parts of the harmony, and add a free part above—

We have here transposed the upper part of the double counterpoint an octave to get a better position for the harmony. This example might have been written, like the last, in the key of D, giving the lower parts to tenor and bass, and the new part, a fifth lower than written, to the alto. We have preferred, for the sake of comparison, to give all our three-part examples for treble, alto, and bass voices. Observe that the E \sharp at (a) makes no false relation with the E \natural of the alto of the preceding bar, because the latter is a passing note.

194. We next add an upper part to the inversion of this counterpoint—



A florid bass, such as is seen here, usually necessitates more changes of the harmony. In the second bar of this example, there are distinctly four chords. At (a) is a point worthy of notice. It looks at first sight as if the bass leapt to a second inversion from the inversion of another chord. So it does, if we choose to consider the third and fourth quavers of the bass as each representing different harmony. But in the free style in which we are now writing, we are not bound to assume this. We may look at the four quavers of the first minim as representing the supertonic chord—B and E being harmony notes, and C and D passing notes, as also would be the C in the treble; or, instead of this, the A in the bass may be regarded as an ornamental note interposed between the E and D. That we have not, in spite of appearances, a true second inversion here, is shown by the fact that it is neither followed by another chord on the same bass note, nor by a chord on the next degree of the scale (*Harmony*, § 165). The only other harmony possible above the A and F would have been the first inversion of the mediant chord, from which the progression to the tonic at the fourth crotchet would have been weak. This passage illustrates the liberty which is allowed in free counterpoint, such as this.

195. It will generally be found more difficult to add a new bass below a double counterpoint than to add upper or middle parts. The following examples will show how this is to be managed—

At (a) is seen a somewhat, though not precisely, analogous example of the introduction of a second inversion to that which we have just been considering. Here we can either call the F in the bass a passing note, in which case the root progression is IVa to Vc; or we can look on the G as a passing note, both in treble and bass, and regard the F as the harmony note, the progression then being Ib to Vc.

196. We now put a bass below the inversion of the counterpoint—

This example requires no explanation; but the student should notice that, though the two upper parts are (except in relative position) identical with those of the last example, every bar of the bass—except, of course, the final tonic—is different from the preceding. It would have been possible to make the same bass do duty below the counterpoint in its new position. We have written a fresh bass, to show that variety can be obtained, even with the restrictions under which we are now writing.

197. We will now add two free parts to our counterpoint. This is naturally rather more difficult than adding only one. We will begin with the easiest position, in which the additional parts are the middle voices—

A musical score for the song "The Rose Tree". The score is written on four staves. The first staff is the vocal melody in G major (one sharp). The second staff is a piano accompaniment in G major. The third staff is a piano accompaniment in G major, marked with a *(b)* above the staff. The fourth staff is a piano accompaniment in G major. The score is in 2/4 time and consists of 16 measures. The first measure is a whole note G4. The second measure is a half note A4. The third measure is a half note B4. The fourth measure is a half note A4. The fifth measure is a half note G4. The sixth measure is a half note F#4. The seventh measure is a half note E4. The eighth measure is a half note D4. The ninth measure is a half note C4. The tenth measure is a half note B3. The eleventh measure is a half note A3. The twelfth measure is a half note G3. The thirteenth measure is a half note F#3. The fourteenth measure is a half note E3. The fifteenth measure is a half note D3. The sixteenth measure is a half note C3.

At (*a*) there is no second inversion of the submediant chord ; if there were, the bass could not leap to the next note. There is here the resolution of a double suspension on the tonic chord, and the B in the treble is only a passing note. At (*b*) the alto and tenor parts cross for one crotchet, to save the octaves with the bass on the unaccented beats which would result if the alto part were—

(Compare *Counterpoint*, § 175.)

198. We next add two upper parts—

The musical score for 'The Rose Tree' is presented in two systems. The first system consists of four staves. The top two staves are for the vocal parts, and the bottom two are for the piano accompaniment. The key signature is one sharp (F#) and the time signature is 4/4. The first staff of the first system has a 'D. C.' (Da Capo) instruction. The second system also consists of four staves, with the first two for the vocal parts and the last two for the piano accompaniment. The first staff of the second system has a '(b)' marking, and the second staff has a '(a)' marking. The score concludes with a final chord in the piano part.

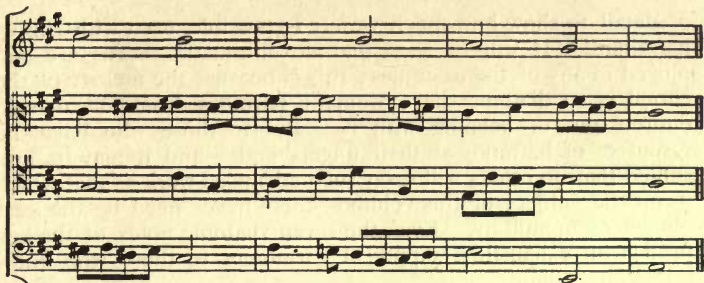
At (a) the G \sharp of the tenor, being an auxiliary note, makes no false relation with the G \flat of the alto. A somewhat similar

example from Bach will be seen in *Harmony*, § 324. Here, however, the effect is much less harsh than in the passage cited, partly because it is here in a middle voice, but chiefly because it returns to the harmony note before the chord changes, which in the extract from Bach it does not. The cadence at (*b*) is not very comfortable; this cannot be helped, as it arises from the low position of the two given parts.

199. In our next example the double counterpoint is in the alto and bass, with one free part above, and one in the middle—

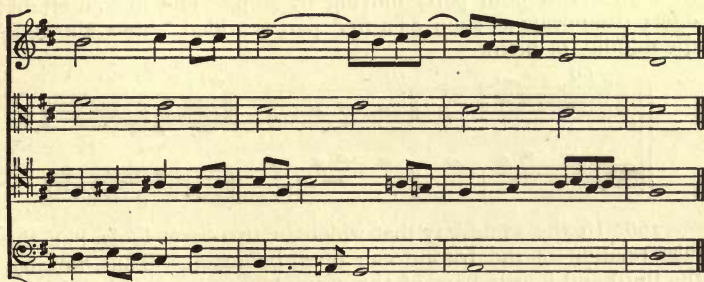
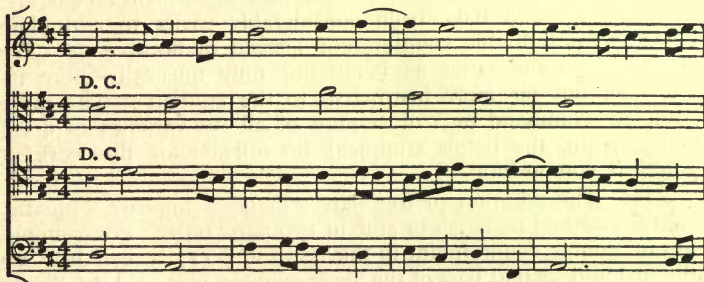
The only remark to make on this example is that at (*a*) we have varied the cadence given in the example to § 193, and intentionally sounded two dissonant notes together in the treble and alto, to show that they can be thus taken, because they form part of the chord of the dominant thirteenth (§ 104).

200. Our next examples illustrate the most difficult combinations—



Here two parts are added below the counterpoints. Note the firm progression of the new bass, resulting from the almost exclusive employment of the strong chords, I., IV., and V., of the keys of A and F# minor (§ 117).

201. Lastly we take the double counterpoint in the two middle voices, adding a treble and a bass—



This example needs no explanation.

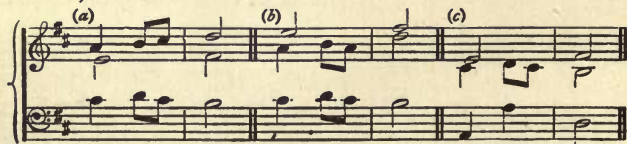
202. We have now added free parts in ten different ways to the same phrase of eight bars; and if the student will compare them, he will see that no two are alike. There is necessarily a general resemblance of character about all, because our choice of harmony is so restricted; but there is quite sufficient diversity

of detail to show how much variety is possible, even with simple harmonies. It will be seen that no chromatic chords are employed in any of the examples; this is because the melody of the choral is so diatonic that chromatic harmony would have been entirely out of keeping with it. But to those who have the resources of harmony at their fingers' ends—and it may be presumed that no others will essay such advanced work as that which forms the subject of this volume—there never need be the least danger of monotony. Even the seven diatonic notes of the key furnish an exhaustless supply of harmonies to those who know how to use them.

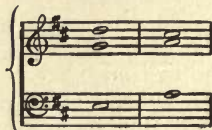
203. It is possible to write free parts which shall themselves be in double counterpoint with the two given parts, and, in at least one standard work of counterpoint, exercises of this kind are set. In reality, however, these are of little practical use; because if a composer wishes to add such a part, he will most probably (and had better) make triple counterpoint at once. How this is to be done will be shown in a subsequent chapter.

204. It would have been considerably easier to add plain chords to our double counterpoint instead of florid parts. We have chosen the latter as being not only musically more interesting, but far more instructive to the student. The more complete command he can acquire of all the varieties of florid counterpoint, the better equipped he will be for the work of practical composition.

205. The addition of free parts will often improve a progression that would be harsh or stiff in two parts only. For example, in our double counterpoint in the tenth in § 117 is seen between the first and second bars of the lower counterpoint a third followed by a fifth, with both parts moving by step. The uncomfortable effect disappears as soon as a free part is added, either above, in the middle, or below—



206. In the same way that which in two parts looks like the false relation of the tritone can often be saved. Thus, in § 67, the third and fourth bars of the example can be mended, in *free* counterpoint—and we need no longer confine ourselves to strict—as follows—



207. We shall conclude this chapter with a few examples of the addition of free parts to double counterpoints by the great masters; and, as the most instructive course we can pursue, we will show how several of the double counterpoints quoted in the last chapter were filled up by their composers. We first take the two passages from Bach's Organ Fugue in C minor given in § 133. Bach fills them up thus—

(1) J. S. BACH. Organ Fugue in C minor.

(2)

At (1) the added voices are the soprano and tenor, and, as the bass remains, the general effect of the harmony is much the same as in the outline previously given. But at (2) outside parts are added, and the new bass gives a totally different character to the music. Notice, especially, how in the third bar at the first crotchet the weak effect of the two-part harmony is improved by the additional voices.

208. In the extract from Bach's Organ Fugue in E minor given in § 135, the passage (1) is in two parts originally. The inversion at (2) appears in the following form—

D. C. J. S. BACH. Organ Fugue in E minor.

D. C.

Here nothing but plain chords are added; the filling up is less contrapuntal than in our last example. Observe the fine and unexpected effect of the chord of the dominant thirteenth in the third bar.

209. The example from Handel's "Susanna" in § 138 is somewhat similar. Here (1) is also in two parts only; at (2) a middle part is added—

D. C. HANDEL. "Susanna."

D. C.

Note that the sequential character of the treble and tenor is maintained in the added alto part. The upper part, as here given, is obviously too high for a chorus. Handel modifies it somewhat in the voice part; it is the first violin part, in which the inversion is exactly retained, which is quoted here.

210. We next show the filling up of the example from Beethoven in § 149—

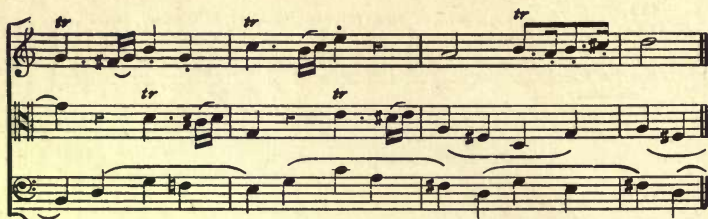
(1) D. C. BEETHOVEN. Quartett in C minor, Op. 18, No. 4.

(2)

This passage illustrates what was said in § 203. If the added middle part of (1) and upper part of (2) be compared, they will be seen to be identical, except that the last three notes in the second passage are lowered an octave. The added part is in double counterpoint with the upper part of (1). Notice that it is possible to use the fourth here in the second bar (becoming a perfect fifth in the inversion), because there is another voice below it. We have no triple counterpoint here, because the added part cannot be used as a bass; if it be, we shall have at the beginning of the third bar a $\frac{6}{4}$ taken by leap from the inversion of another chord.

211. Our next illustration is somewhat similar: it is the completion of the passage from Cherubini given in § 151—

(1) D. C. CHERUBINI. Quartett in C.



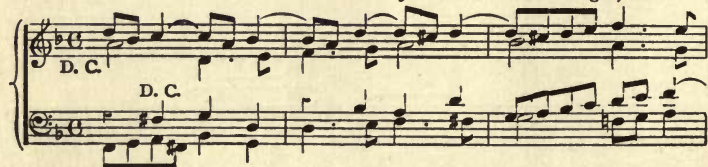
(2) D. C.



In both these passages we have three-part harmony only; in (1) the first violin is silent, while in (2) the two violins play in octaves throughout. The added middle part is here written in double counterpoint to both the others; the slight modifications at (2) are evidently made for the sake of getting more complete harmony.

212. We now give two examples of the filling up of a double counterpoint in the tenth. We first take that shown at (a) of § 155—

J. S. BACH. "Art of Fugue," No. 10.





Here, as in (2) of § 207, two outer parts are added. The passage requires no explanation, but, like all the other examples we are giving, will repay close examination.

213. In the inversion shown at § 155 (b) the added parts are the treble and tenor—



214. Lastly we shall give two examples of added parts to double counterpoint in the twelfth. We first take that quoted in § 171 from Bach's "Wohltemperirtes Clavier." At (1) the counterpoint is as we have given it, in two parts only; but at (2) it is completed thus—



Here the added parts are the tenor and bass.

215. Our concluding example will be from Mozart's "Requiem"; the outline of which was seen in the three passages given in § 175. Of these that marked (1) is, as there shown, in two voices only; numbers (2) and (3) are filled up in the following manner—

(1) MOZART. "Requiem."

(2) D. C.

In the first of these passages the double counterpoint is in the bass and alto; in the second it is in the treble and bass, two middle parts being added. Observe in the last bar but one of (2) how the inversion in the twelfth of the interval of the sixth in the pattern is used as a dominant seventh.

216. The student will now be prepared to practise the writing of additional parts to double counterpoints for himself. He will find it a very useful exercise to complete the counterpoint given in § 114 in all the ten ways in which we have worked the first eight bars for him in §§ 192-201. He can then take the double counterpoints we have given in §§ 117, 121, and treat them in the same way. After this, if he desires more practice, he may take any of the two-part examples from the works of the great masters given in Chapter VI., and try to add free parts of his own to them in all the various positions. Or, if he prefer it, he can first write for himself two parts in double counterpoint in the octave, tenth, or twelfth, and then add free parts. He will find ample material in the examples we have given for as many exercises as he is likely to want.

CHAPTER VIII.

DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT IN THE RARER INTERVALS.

217. Although, as has been more than once said, the only double counterpoints in common use are those in the octave, tenth, and twelfth, it is also possible to write counterpoints which will invert at the other intervals. There are, however, as will be seen directly, such difficulties connected with all these, as to render them practically useless, except incidentally. So far as we know, no compositions exist in which double counterpoints in the ninth, eleventh, thirteenth, or fourteenth are used systematically, as are those which have been already considered. It is, indeed, quite probable that where they are to be found, their occurrence is the result of accident, rather than of design. It would, therefore, be useless to give the student any rules for writing such counterpoints; but, for the sake of completeness, and as musical curiosities, we shall in this chapter give a few examples of each variety.

218. I. *Double counterpoint in the ninth.* One of the rarest and most unmanageable of all. The table of inversions in the ninth will evidently be the following—

INTERVALS: 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

INVERSIONS: 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

An examination of this table shows at once where the difficulty lies. Every consonance except the fifth becomes a dissonance when inverted; and although we have several times seen, in working our double counterpoints in the octave, tenth, and twelfth, how a harmony note may become a passing note in the inversion, and, *vice versa*, it is very evident that if we have to treat every harmony note, except the fifth, in this way, our difficulties will be enormously increased. That it is, nevertheless, possible to write short passages in this counterpoint will appear from the specimens now to be given

219. Our first example is by Marpurg—

Counterpoint. MARPURG.

S
Inversion in the ninth below.

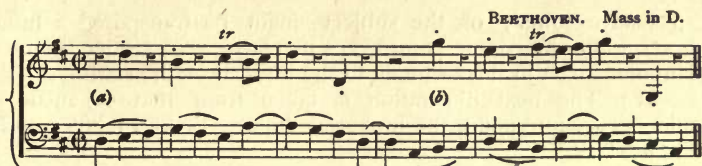
In this very ingenious example, it will be seen that, excepting with the first and last notes, every consonance in one part is a prepared dissonance in the other. This counterpoint can also be inverted by transposing the subject a ninth higher, in which case it would be better to sharpen the C's, and thus take the music into the key of D.

220. Our next illustration is taken from Lobe's "Composition," Vol. III.—

J. C LOBE.

The inversion in the bass is in the original an octave lower than here given, so as to leave room for the subsequent addition of free parts. It is here put at the real interval of a ninth below the model.

221. We shall give later in this chapter (§ 236) a very fine example from Bach, in which double counterpoints in the ninth and fourteenth are employed simultaneously. We now give a specimen by Beethoven—



Here the counterpoint at (b) is clearly a repetition of that at (a), but at a different interval; for the first interval, which before was a seventh, is now a sixth, and so on with the others. Whenever both counterpoints are above (as here), or both below, it is necessary to invert one of them in the octave, in order to find the interval of inversion (§ 9). If we thus invert (b) we shall get this form—



Now let us compare this with (a). We see that the seventh has become a third, the third a seventh, the sixth a fourth, and so on. In each case, the addition of the two intervals gives the number 10; the counterpoint is therefore in the ninth (§ 8).

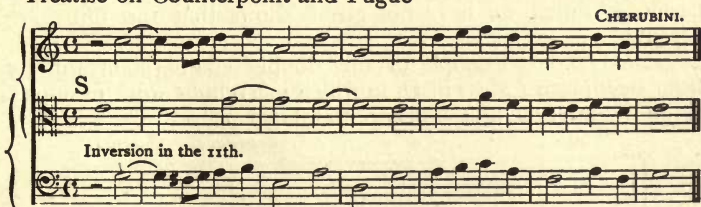
222. II. *Double counterpoint in the eleventh.* This counterpoint is, on the whole, much less difficult and troublesome than that in the ninth. The inversions are the following—

INTERVALS: I 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11

INVERSIONS: 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Here, as with the ninth, there is only one consonance which does not become a dissonance when inverted; but there is this advantage that, as the consonance in question is the sixth, we can use it more than once consecutively. We shall see presently that in no other of these rarer counterpoints is there any interval which can be used in the same way.

223. Our first example is by Cherubini, and is taken from his "Treatise on Counterpoint and Fugue"—



Various other transpositions are, of course, possible, e.g., the subject might be transposed a fourth higher, and the counterpoint

an octave lower; or the subject might be transposed a fifth lower, while the counterpoint keeps its place, &c. Notice the importance given in this example to the interval of the sixth.

224. The next illustration is taken from that exhaustless mine of counterpoint, the immortal "Forty-Eight Preludes and Fugues"—

Bars 25, 26. J. S. BACH. "Wohltemperirtes Clavier," Prelude 7.

Bars 58, 59.

It will be seen that the counterpoint is not strictly carried on to the end of the inversion, to which Bach has added a lower part. It is very seldom that these rare counterpoints are continued for more than a few notes.

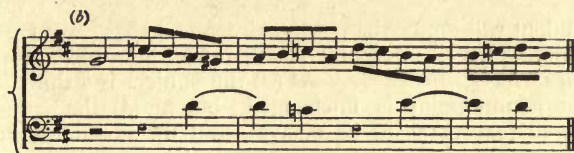
225. The following curious, though very fragmentary, passage from Bach deserves quotation—

J. S. BACH. Cantata, "Ich, elender Mensch."

The first bar of (a) is inverted at (b) in the eleventh, and at (c) in the ninth. It should be said that there are not really consecutive fifths at (b), as would appear from this extract; the accompanying harmony, which we have not given, shows that the fifths are accented passing notes.

226. Our last example of this double counterpoint will be from Beethoven's Mass in D, in which marvellous work examples of all the rarer counterpoints are to be met with—

(a) BEETHOVEN. Mass in D.



It is curious that in this example the sixth, the only consonant interval, is not used at all except as a passing note.

227. III. *Double counterpoint in the thirteenth.* The table of inversions for this counterpoint will be—

INTERVALS: I 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13

INVERSIONS: 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

The thirteenth is a compound interval, an octave and a sixth; and it will be seen from the above table that these two intervals are the only consonances which remain consonant when inverted. Though we have here two such intervals, while in double counterpoint of the eleventh we had only one, we are in reality no better off—rather worse, in fact, because we cannot use consecutive sixths.

228. Our first specimen of this counterpoint is from Cherubini—

CHERUBINI.

Inversion in 13th.

As with other double counterpoints, various other methods of inversion are possible. We give the commencement of two—


(a) (b)

&c. &c.


The student will notice that, although we call these two positions "inversions," the counterpoint is still above the subject, *but at a different interval from before*. At (a) the subject is a third lower, and the counterpoint is unchanged; but at (b) the subject is unchanged (except as to its octave), and the counterpoint is a sixth lower. We have purposely chosen these positions to make clear to the student's mind a point which has more than once been incidentally touched on. In any double counterpoint, other than that in the octave, the counterpoint is frequently seen in the same relative position to the subject, but at a different distance. In such a case, inversion, *followed by re-inversion in the octave*, is always implied. In the present examples, if the student will invert (a) and (b) in the fifteenth, he will see that the intervals they will make with the subject will be the same as in the fully-worked example.

229. Our next illustration will further exemplify this point—

(a) Bars 49—51. BACH. "Wohltemperirtes Clavier," Fugue 4.



(b) Bars 79—81.



In these two passages, the relative position of the two subjects is unchanged; but the intervals are quite different. To find the interval of inversion, re-invert (b) in the octave—

(c)



Now compare (c) with (a). The eighth has become a sixth, the fifth a ninth, the third an eleventh, and so on. The two numbers added together amount in every case to 14; the double counterpoint is therefore in the thirteenth. We met with a similar case in § 221; but as this matter may cause the student some trouble if not properly understood, it was as well to give a second illustration.

230. In treating of free double counterpoint in the tenth, we saw (§§ 156, 157) how thirds added inside a double counterpoint in the tenth would give double counterpoint in the octave.

Similarly, if we add thirds inside a double counterpoint in the octave, we get double counterpoint in the sixth, or (which is the same thing) in the thirteenth, as in all probability the octave will really be at the distance of a fifteenth. We give a very good example of this device—

(a) HANDEL. "Chandos Te Deum."

(b)

Here the treble and bass of (b) are the inversion in the octave of (a); and the student will be easily able to discover by calculation that the thirds added above the bass give the inversion, in the thirteenth with the upper part, of the preceding counterpoint.

231. Our next example is somewhat, though not precisely similar—

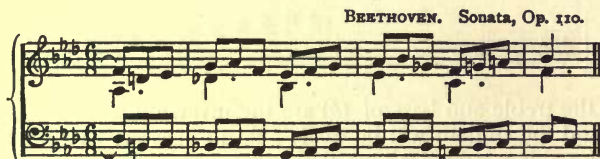
(a) BEETHOVEN. Mass in D.

(b)

Here, as in our examples to §§ 221, 229, the relative position of the parts is unchanged. The tenor of (b) is the same as the bass of (a); and thirds are added *outside* the counterpoint in the octave. But if the two lower parts are inverted with the subject, thus—

it will bring the added thirds *inside* the octave; and it will be readily seen that we have here, as in the last example, double counterpoint in the thirteenth.

232. From our last two examples it will be clear that the double counterpoint now under notice shares with that in the tenth (§ 80) the peculiarity that it can be employed against the subject in its two positions simultaneously. In both these passages the two counterpoints were below the subject; for our final illustration we give a passage in which one of the counterpoints is above, and the other below. In § 176 we quoted the subject and counter-subject of the fugue in Beethoven's Sonata in A flat, Op. 110. At the 27th bar of the same movement the following is seen—



Here there is not the slightest difficulty in discovering the nature of the counterpoint, as the two positions are exactly a thirteenth apart. Just as the two counterpoints of the tenth move in thirds or sixths according to their position (compare examples to §§ 156, 158), those in the thirteenth move in sixths or thirds. It must be noticed that here the upper counterpoint could not be used without the lower, because of the consecutive fourths which would result with the subject. A similar case will be seen later (§ 238).

233. IV. *Double counterpoint in the fourteenth.* The last of these rare counterpoints. Its table of inversions is—

INTERVALS: 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14

INVERSIONS: 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

This counterpoint resembles that last noticed in containing two consonances (the third and fifth, with, of course, their octaves, the tenth and twelfth) which remain consonances when inverted; but, just as in double counterpoint of the thirteenth, we were unable to use consecutive sixths, we are now unable to employ consecutive thirds, as they become fifths by inversion.

234. We first give an example of this counterpoint by Marpurg—

MARBURG.

MARFURG.

Inversion in 14th.

This musical score is for a piece titled "Inversion in 14th." by Marfurg. It is written for three staves: Treble, Alto, and Bass. The key signature has one sharp (F#), and the time signature is common time (C). The notation includes various note values (quarter, eighth, and sixteenth notes) and rests, with some notes beamed together. The piece concludes with a double bar line and repeat dots.

Note how in this example fifths are taken by contrary motion on the accented notes, and the bad effect saved by the interposition of other notes. As in previous cases, other methods of inversion are possible; these the student ought now to be able without difficulty to discover for himself.

235. Our next example is from Bach—

(a) Bars 40—51. J. S. BACH. "Wohltemperirtes Clavier," Fugue 4.

Bar 49-51. J. S. Bach: Well-tempered Clavier, Vol. 2

(b) Bars 92-94.

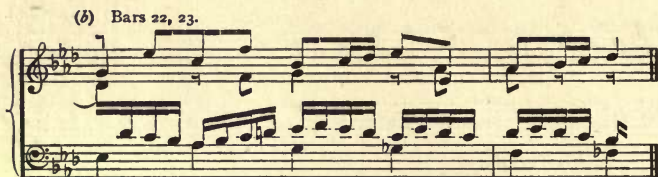
We have already quoted the passage (a) in § 229; it is curious that the same counterpoint of which we there showed the inversion in the thirteenth, should here be inverted in the fourteenth—an inversion which the student will have no difficulty in verifying.

236. The following most interesting combination,

J. S. BACH. "Wohltemperirtes Clavier," Fugue 41.

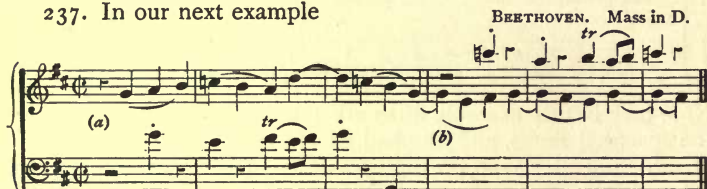
(a) Bars 6, 7.

(a) Bars 6, 7.



is that which we referred to in § 221. If the two upper parts of (a) are compared, beginning at the third crotchet, with the two lower parts of (b), it will be seen that they are there inverted in the ninth. At the same time the two lower voices of (a) are, as the treble and tenor of (b), inverted in the fourteenth.

237. In our next example



we have the pattern (a) inverted at (b) partly in the thirteenth and partly in the fourteenth. The variation arises from the modification at (b) of the upper part of (a).

238. Our last illustration is taken from the very interesting fugue from which we have more than once quoted—



If the counterpoints here be compared with that of the pattern given in § 176, it will be found that the lower voice is the inversion in the twelfth, and the middle voice that in the fourteenth, of the original counterpoint. Here the twelfth and fourteenth are used in thirds, just as the octave and tenth can be. We assume that the student is by this time sufficiently familiar with the necessary calculations to be able to verify the intervals of inversion for himself.

239. If the examples and explanations given in this chapter have been fully understood, it will easily be seen why these rarer double counterpoints can only be used incidentally. Whereas in double counterpoint of the octave, tenth, and twelfth, there

are never less than four consonant intervals which remain consonant when inverted, there is only one which so remains in double counterpoint of the ninth or eleventh, and only two in double counterpoint of the thirteenth and fourteenth, and, except in double counterpoint of the eleventh, no consecutive intervals are possible. It will nevertheless be useful practice for the student to try to invent short passages, similar to those that we have given in §§ 219, 220, 223, 228, and 234, which shall be in double counterpoint with one another at these various intervals. This will be found profitable, because complete mastery of free part-writing is best acquired by much practice of all styles; it will also be interesting, and even amusing, for there is no greater delight to the earnest student than that of overcoming some formidable difficulty. It is for this reason that we have devoted a whole chapter to a subject which most treatises (except Cherubini's) either pass over in silence, or dismiss in a few contemptuous words, as unworthy of serious attention.

CHAPTER IX.

TRIPLE AND QUADRUPLE COUNTERPOINT.

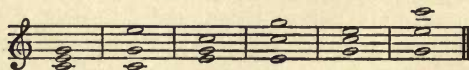
240. By Triple and Quadruple Counterpoint are meant those varieties in which three or four combined melodies are capable of being inverted in the octave, so as to be taken in any possible relative position to one another—that is to say, that each of the voices may be either an upper part, a middle part, or the bass; and in all positions the voices considered together shall form correct harmony.

241. Speaking first of triple counterpoint, it must be remarked that three parts are capable of combination with one another in six different ways. Supposing we call the three parts A, B, C, the possible combinations will be the following—

A	A	B	B	C	C
B	C	A	C	A	B
C	B	C	A	B	A

It does not necessarily follow that if we are writing in triple counterpoint, we are compelled to employ all six positions; it is, as a matter of fact, rather the exception than the rule to meet with a piece in which all six combinations are actually used; but in any correctly written counterpoint of this kind they will all be possible, and the composer will select whichever he chooses.

242. If we take the three notes of the common chord of C, and place them in their six possible relative positions to one another,

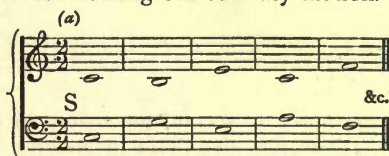


it will be seen that in two cases out of the six, the fifth of the chord must be in the bass, giving us a second inversion. For this reason, if we attempt to write triple counterpoint in the *strict* style, we shall be unable to use the fifth of a chord at all, except as a passing note. We are thus so restricted that writing *music*, in the true sense of the term, becomes impossible under such conditions; therefore, though some text-books give rules for the

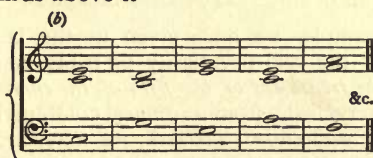
writing of such counterpoints, the student is not recommended to waste his time over them.

243. The simplest, but also (so to speak) the *cheapest* and least valuable kind of triple counterpoint is obtained by adding thirds above or below a double counterpoint in the octave. But a moment's thought will show the student that it is not every double counterpoint in the octave which is capable of being thus treated. If, for example, we have consecutive thirds or sixths, the additions of thirds outside these intervals will give consecutive fifths or octaves. We can, therefore, as with double counterpoint in the tenth, employ only contrary and oblique motion. But even then, we shall not always be comfortable. If, for example, our double counterpoint contains the interval of a third left by leap, and we add a third above it, we shall get a fifth, also left by leap, which in some of the positions will certainly get us into trouble.

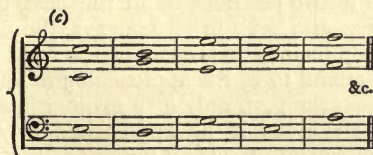
244. An example will make this clear. Let us write a simple counterpoint of the first species against a few bars of the subject which we have so often treated in the strict style. As we are proposing to add thirds to it, to make a triple counterpoint, we will take care to use nothing but contrary motion.



This counterpoint is correct enough, though not very interesting. Now we add thirds above it—



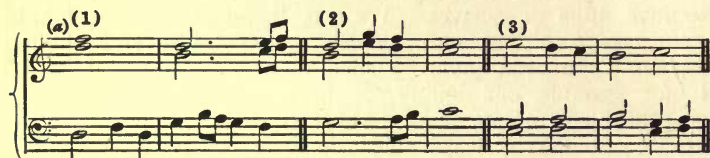
If this is a good triple counterpoint, it must be capable of being taken in any position. Let us put the added upper part in the bass—



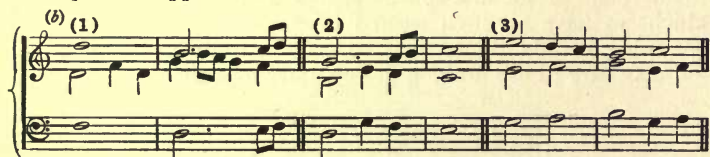
More atrocious counterpoint than this cannot be conceived. As we are writing in the free style, second inversions are not pro-

hibited, but they must be properly treated. Here the second inversion in bar 2 leaps to the inversion of another chord, which in its turn leaps to another second inversion, which is just as badly quitted as that in the second bar.

245. It is seldom, if ever, that a triple counterpoint made by the addition of thirds will be available in all positions. Even in the example of this kind, given by Cherubini, in his "Treatise on Counterpoint," we find such progressions as the following—



If we put the upper or middle voice in the bass,



we see in all examples a second inversion wrongly treated; Cherubini, in fact, does not give these inversions. The truth is, that this is at best a very inferior kind of triple counterpoint; the only legitimate sort, and that which we shall treat in this chapter, is the combination of three *independent* melodies.

246. The examples we have given in the last two sections show us wherein the real peculiarity of triple counterpoint consists. It is in *the treatment of the fifth of the chord*. Apart from this, it differs very little from ordinary combined counterpoint. To paraphrase a well-known proverb, we may say, Take care of the fifths, and the roots and thirds will take care of themselves.

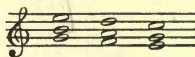
247. If the student will look at the six possible positions of a common chord given in § 242, he will see that, as there pointed out, the fifth will in two positions be in the bass, giving a second inversion. He has also seen in §§ 244, 245, the disastrous effect of a careless or injudicious treatment of the fifth. What he has now specially to attend to is, the approaching or quitting the fifth of a chord, in whatever part, only in a manner in which the bass of a second inversion could be approached or quitted. The rules for the employment of second inversions are given in full in *Harmony*, §§ 188, 189. Let us apply these rules to the present case.

248. I. The fifth of a chord can only be approached *by leap* from another note of the same chord (when the harmony must remain the same, except as to its position), or from the root of the preceding chord. If it be approached by leap from the third or fifth of the preceding chord, it is clear that when taken in the bass, the second inversion will be approached from an inversion of another chord.

249. II. If the fifth be approached by step, the preceding note may be either the root or the third (very rarely the fifth) of another chord. It is also possible, though seldom advisable in triple counterpoint, for the fifth to have appeared as one of the notes of the preceding chord.

250. III. The fifth of any chord may not be quitted by leap, except to the root or third of the same chord, the harmony remaining unchanged. If the fifth of a chord be either the tonic or the dominant of the key, it may remain as the root of the following chord, provided that the first of the two chords be on the stronger accent. In all other cases it must move by step to the following note.

251. It is evident that in triple counterpoint it will be impossible to make use of consecutive chords of the sixth,



because in some of the inversions they will make consecutive fifths. It will be well in any case to use the fifth sparingly, especially in the weaker chords of the key (II., III., and VI.): many theorists prohibit the employment of the fifth of a chord altogether, except as a prepared discord, or a passing note; but if the rules we have given be observed, it may be safely used, as no objectionable $\frac{6}{4}$ chords will result from its inversion.

252. It will be advisable in writing triple counterpoint to use chiefly the strong chords of the key (I., IV., V., and VII.); and in the weaker chords it will often be well to omit the fifth altogether, as the second inversions of these chords, though not impossible, can rarely be employed with good effect.

253. It will frequently happen that some positions of a triple counterpoint will sound more satisfactory than others. As it will be seldom necessary, or even advisable, to use all six positions, the student can select for himself those that are best; but he should at least introduce each of the three voices once in the bass. This is the general practice of Bach.

254. It is but seldom that a composition is written in triple counterpoint throughout. Before proceeding to give examples from the works of the great masters, we quote from Cherubini's

Treatise a short specimen, giving all the six positions, for the sake of comparison—

Concerning this very simple and intelligible example, it is only needful to remark that the fifth of a chord only appears once, at (a), when it leaps to the root of the same chord, according to the rule given in § 250.

255. Our first examples of triple counterpoint shall be taken from the inexhaustible Bach—

J. S. BACH. "Wohltemperirtes Clavier," Prelude 19.

The musical score consists of four systems, each with three staves. The key signature is one sharp (F#), and the time signature is 4/4. The first system is the initial setting. The second system, labeled '(II.)', shows the first voice (treble clef) continuing with a similar pattern, while the second (alto) and third (bass) voices are modified. The third system, labeled '(III.)', shows further modifications to the voices. The fourth system, labeled '(IV.)', shows the final setting. The score includes various musical notations such as notes, rests, and accidentals.

We shall give all our examples in score, that the student may more easily follow the progression of the several voices. Let the student first notice the strongly contrasted character of the three subjects. This should always be borne in mind as an important essential in writing triple counterpoint. Four of the six possible combinations are used in this prelude, and No. I. is also met with in the key of the relative minor. It will be seen that the end of the alto of No. I. is modified in II. and III.; such slight changes can always be made, if desirable, provided that they do not too far alter the character of the subject. In the middle of the theme they would be objectionable.

256. In two of the fugues in the same work (No. 4, in C sharp minor, and No. 21, in B flat), triple counterpoint is very extensively employed. The latter fugue is, with the exception of two short episodes, written in triple counterpoint throughout. Instead of quoting from these, we give a short episodical passage from another fugue in the same work, which is particularly interesting from the fact that Bach has here used all the six possible inversions. We mark the subjects with A, B, C, for their easier identification—

J. S. BACH. "Wohltemperirtes Clavier," Fugue 37.

(I.) Bar 12.

(II.) B

(III.) C

(IV.) Bar 44.

(V.) C

(VI.) A

It will be seen here, as in our last illustration, that the theme which at (I.) appears in the bass is slightly altered when given to the other voices, the rise of a fourth being substituted for the fall of a fifth. Observe also the way in which the fifths of the chords are treated, and compare the rules given earlier in this chapter.

257. Our last extract from Bach is taken from the "Art of Fugue"—

(I.) Bar 147. A J. S. BACH. "Art of Fugue, No. 8.

(II.) C A B

(III.) B A

C

(IV.) Bar 170.

The musical score consists of two systems of three staves each. The first system is labeled '(IV.) Bar 170.' and shows three subjects: A (bottom staff), B (middle staff), and C (top staff). Subject C is marked with a 'C' above the first note. Subject B is marked with a 'B' above the first note. Subject A is marked with an 'A' above the first note. The second system continues the subjects. The bottom staff (A) has a trill 'tr' marked above the final note. The key signature is one flat (B-flat) and the time signature is common time (C).

To assist the student in examining these passages, the entries of the three subjects are marked as above, with A, B, and C, in each inversion. Notice here the curious changes in the harmony produced by the chromatic alteration of notes in the subjects. In (I.) for instance the $D\sharp$ in the upper voice is treated as the augmented fourth of the scale, and is resolved on the first inversion of the dominant seventh. But at (II.) the third note of the subject C which before was a tone ($G\sharp$) above the preceding note, is now only a semitone (D); this alters the harmony, and here the $A\sharp$ of the middle voice is shown by its resolution on the chord of D minor to be really $B\flat$. If the student will analyze this example carefully, he will find other interesting points for himself.

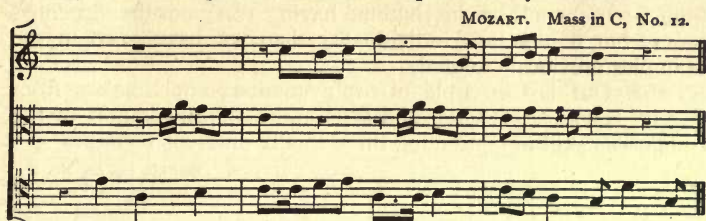
258. In our next example

HANDEL. "Hercules.

The musical score consists of three staves. The top staff is marked with a 'C' above the first note. The middle staff is marked with a 'B' above the first note. The bottom staff is marked with an 'A' above the first note. The key signature is one flat (B-flat) and the time signature is common time (C).

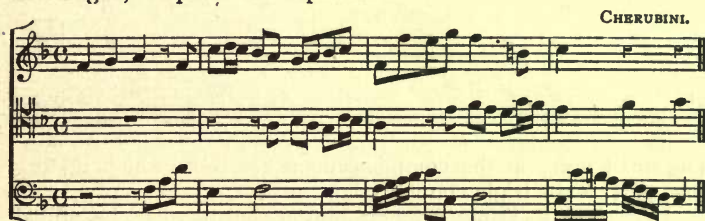
we give only the model. After the full illustrations and explanations already given, it will be profitable for the student to write out the six positions for himself. In the chorus from which the above passage is taken Handel employs four of the six positions.

259. We next give a little-known specimen by Mozart—

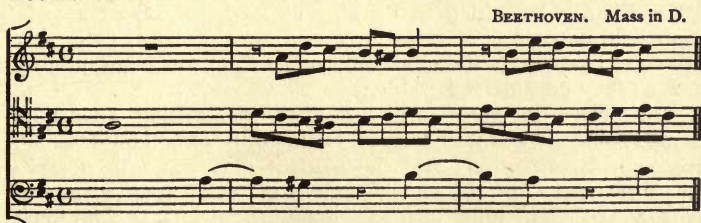


It is worth mentioning here that this extract is taken from Mozart's 12th Mass. The work usually known by this name is now universally admitted by all authorities to be spurious. The Mass here quoted was published for the first time in 1878 in the complete edition of Mozart's works. Note, as in previous examples, the contrasted character of the three themes.

260. The following example, from Cherubini's "Counterpoint and Fugue," requires no explanation—

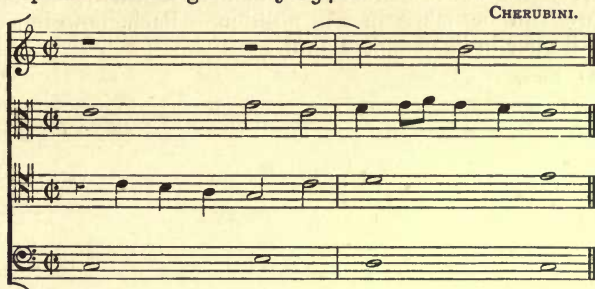


261. In modern compositions real triple counterpoint is very rare. The reason for this is probably to be found (at all events in some cases) not so much in the inability, or even indolence, of the composers, as in the general tendency in the direction of free part-writing which is characteristic of most recent music. For a specimen of this kind of counterpoint we give a short passage by Beethoven—



This illustration differs from those already given in the fact that the upper part is an imitation of a part of the tenor subject. In

much rarer than triple, and we shall not be able to give many good examples of it. Our first will be a short specimen by Cherubini, very similar in character and themes to the triple counterpoint that we gave in § 254—



It will be a useful exercise for the student who wishes to obtain an insight into the subject to write out all the possible positions of this little example.

266. It is very seldom that genuine quadruple counterpoint is to be found excepting in fugues; and even in these it is more often met with incidentally than as an essential part of the structure of the piece. Such is the case in the illustrations from Bach next to be given. In the fugue in F minor, in the first book of the "Forty-Eight," is found the following passage—

(1) Bar 13. J. S. BACH. "Wohltemperirtes Clavier," Fugue 12.

Notice in the second and third bars, the crossing of the alto and tenor parts. In quadruple counterpoint, the crossing of parts is neither infrequent nor objectionable.

267. If the above extract be examined, it will be seen that the parts can be taken in any position. Bach, however, only inverts it once in its complete form—

(2) Bar 27.

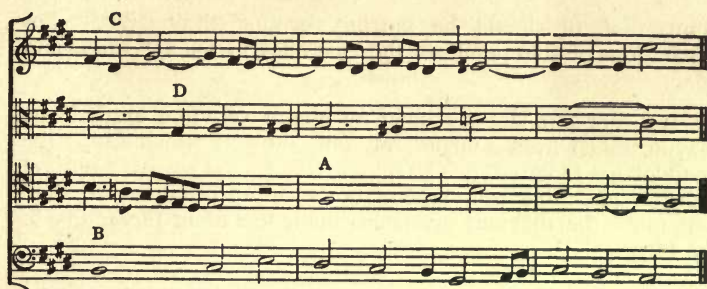
The musical score for Bar 27 consists of two systems, each with four staves. The key signature is B-flat major (two flats). The first system is labeled (a) and the second system is labeled (b). Both systems show a crossing of parts between the alto and tenor staves. The first system ends with '&c.' in the third staff.

Here two slight modifications are made. At (a) the rests in the pattern are filled up; and at (b) the note B enters one semiquaver earlier than before, to avoid the repercussion of the note immediately after it had been sounded in the treble.

268. Our next example is simpler in construction—

J. S. BACH. "Wohltemperirtes Clavier," Fugue 33.

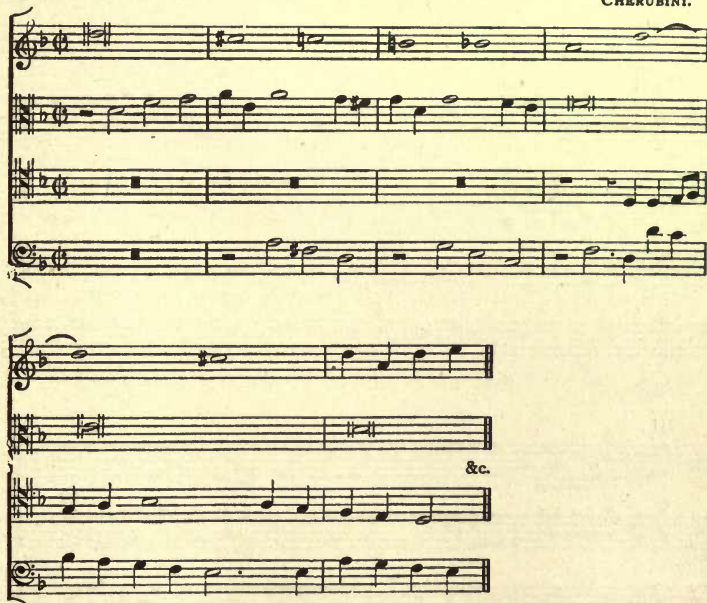
The musical score for J. S. Bach's Fugue 33 shows the first four staves of the fugue. Each staff is labeled with a letter (A, B, C, D) indicating the entry of a new voice. The key signature is D major (two sharps).



Here the inversion follows immediately on the model. (Compare the example in § 256.) That the student may more readily trace the inversion, we have marked with letters the entries of the four subjects.

269. We now give two examples in which quadruple counterpoint is employed more systematically. The first is the opening of a fugue on four subjects, taken from Cherubini's "Counterpoint and Fugue"—

CHERUBINI.



It is usual for the voices to enter in succession, as here, and it is by no means necessary, either in triple or in quadruple counter-

point, that all should be moving together throughout. For illustrations of this point see the examples in §§ 258, 260, and 262.

270. For our last specimen we give a very fine example by Haydn, taken from a fugue on four subjects which forms the finale of his Quartett in C, Op. 20, No. 2. As we have not yet shown a quadruple counterpoint in its various positions, we shall here quote the different inversions made use of in the course of the fugue—

(I.) A HAYDN. Quartett, Op. 20. No. 2.

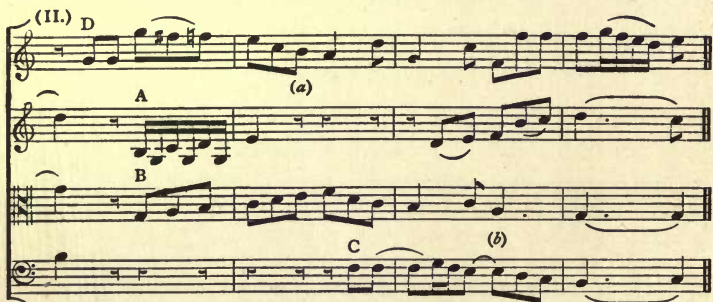
1st VIOLIN. 

2nd VIOLIN. 

VIOLA. 

VIOLONCELLO. 

(II.) D A (a) B C (b)



(III.) A D C B (c)



(IV.) ^D

C

A

B

(V.) ^D

B

C

A

(VI.)

C

B

A

D

(d)

We see here six different positions of the four voices, out of the possible twenty-four. To assist the student we have lettered the four themes, so that he can readily trace them in all their inversions.

271. At (I.) we have the first presentation of all the subjects together, on which immediately follows at (II.) an inversion of the same. The slight alteration of the theme D at (*a*) is a result of the construction of the fugue, and will be explained in our next volume. At (*b*) is a transposition of the last notes of theme B an octave lower—most likely to avoid the awkward overlapping of the parts which would otherwise have occurred. Notice, both in the model and in the inversions, how very freely the parts cross.

272. The only point to notice in the position marked (III.) is the consecutive unisons at (*c*) between the first and second violins. An examination of the passage that follows shows that we have not a slip of the pen here. The first violin is beginning an ascending chromatic passage, and Haydn apparently thought the unisons better than changing the last note of the subject in the second violin. It is perhaps such passages as this that the old composer referred to, when he said that "the rules were all his very obedient humble servants!"

273. Position (IV.) is interesting as showing, not only a new disposition of the parts, but a fragmentary presentation of some of the subjects. Only the first bar of theme A appears; and the violoncello does not complete theme B, the conclusion of which is taken up by the viola. Position (V.) needs no special remark. In the last position (VI.) it will be seen that the violoncello, instead of completing its theme, D, takes up at (*d*) the theme C, in imitation of the first violin, being itself imitated by that instrument in the following bar.

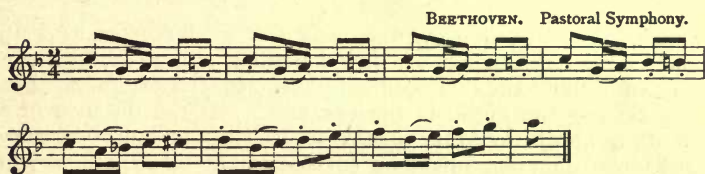
274. This masterly specimen of quadruple counterpoint deserves the most careful study. One of the most striking points about it is the apparent ease and perfect fluency with which the four parts move together. It is related of one of the old Italian contrapuntists that one of his pupils, greatly admiring a piece of very elaborate counterpoint, remarked to the master, "Ah! quanto è facile!" ("Ah! how easy it is!") His master replied, "Ma quanto difficile è questo facile!" ("But how difficult this 'easy' is!") Such counterpoint as that which we have treated of in this chapter can only be mastered by great patience and perseverance. The great composers were unremitting in their studies, and any one who can write the more elaborate varieties of counterpoint with correctness and fluency may justly say, like the Roman captain of old, "With a great price obtained I this freedom." Rules and examples will do something, but not all; abundant practice and steady hard work are the true requisites for success.

PART II.—CANON.

CHAPTER X.

IMITATION.

275. If in a piece of music the same melodic figure occurs twice or more in succession, in the same part, either beginning each time on the same degree of the scale, or each time on a different degree, we have in the former case a *repetition*, and in the latter (if the interval of entry of each new recurrence of the figure be regular) a *sequence*. (*Harmony*, § 133.)



In the above extract the first four bars are a repetition of the same figure; from the fourth bar to the end we have a rather free sequence.

276. If, however, the repetition of the figure, whether at the same or at a different pitch, *be in a different part of the harmony*, we get IMITATION.

BEETHOVEN.
Pastoral Symphony.

V. 1mo.

V. 2do.

Viola.

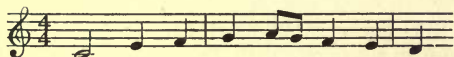
Cello.

The image shows a musical score for three parts: Violin 1 (V. 1mo.), Violin 2 (V. 2do.), and Viola/Cello. The key signature is G major and the time signature is 4/4. The Violin 1 part has four measures of music, starting with a half note G, followed by a quarter note A, a quarter note B, and a half note C. The Violin 2 and Viola/Cello parts have four measures of music, starting with a half note D, followed by a quarter note E, a quarter note F, and a half note G. This illustrates imitation, where the same melodic figure is repeated in different parts of the harmony.

In this passage, the figure announced by the first violins is imitated by the violas and violoncellos in the lower octave; these are in turn imitated by the first violins, and these last by the seconds. It will be noticed that in the last two bars of the passage just quoted, the imitation is far from exact; it is, in fact, only a *rhythmic* imitation. This point we shall refer to presently

277. Imitation may be either *strict* or *free*. It is said to be strict when not only the names of the intervals between the various notes are the same in the imitation as in the pattern, but when the character of the intervals is also unchanged, that is to say, when a tone is always imitated by a tone, a semitone by a semitone, and so on. In actual composition this is very rarely possible except when the interval of imitation is either the unison (or octave), the perfect fourth or the perfect fifth, above or below. A little thought will show the student that if the imitation be at any other distance, and we preserve the intervals exactly, we shall modulate—probably into some remote key.

278. Suppose, for instance, that we announce a simple phrase in C major for imitation,



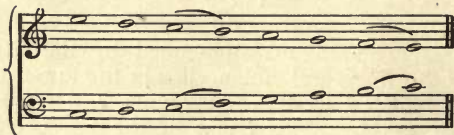
and attempt to imitate it *exactly* at the second below, the imitation will be—



which, obviously, destroys the feeling of tonality at once. In such a case we should use free imitation, and write the latter passage without the sharps, altering the character of the intervals, but keeping the music in the key of C. At the distance of a fourth or fifth it would be possible to use strict imitation, because any modulation that might be effected would be only to one of the most nearly related keys.

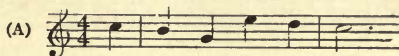
279. There are many different varieties of imitation with which the student should be acquainted. By far the most frequently used is *direct* imitation, that is to say, that in which every ascending or descending interval of the pattern is answered by a corresponding ascending or descending interval, whether strict or free depending, of course, as just shown, on the distance of the imitation.

280. Imitation *by inversion* is obtained by imitating every ascending interval of the pattern by a corresponding descending interval, and every descending by the corresponding ascending. It is possible in a major key to make this kind of imitation strict as to intervals. For this purpose the following scheme is used—



The position of the semitones, it will be seen, is identical in both series of notes, and to get strict imitation by inversion it is only

necessary to answer each note of the one series by the note immediately over (or under) it of the other. Thus tonic and mediant will answer each other, dominant and submediant, and so on. On this method the following passage

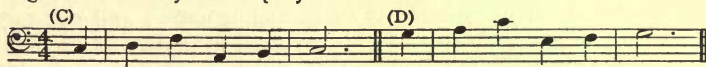


would be imitated thus—

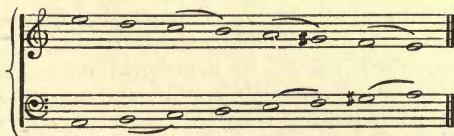


where it will be seen that every interval is of precisely the same quality in the imitation as in the pattern.

281. Though this strict imitation by inversion is, as we see, quite possible, it is seldom that it is actually used by the great masters. The probable reason for this is, that (as will be observed) all the most important notes of the key—the tonic, dominant, and subdominant, are imitated by the less important ones. It is therefore far more usual, either to imitate tonic by tonic, and dominant by subdominant, or to imitate tonic by dominant, and dominant by tonic. Instead, therefore, of the imitation shown at (B) of the last section, one of the two following would mostly be employed—



282. In a minor key strict imitation by inversion is not possible. That which is to be found is constructed according to the following scheme—



If the melodic forms of the minor scale be used, the major sixth and seventh of the ascending scale will be answered respectively by the minor seventh and sixth of the descending. It will be seen that in this scheme two of the three semitones correspond in both scales, while the important interval of the augmented second, and its inversion, the diminished seventh, will be retained in the imitation—

Imitation by inversion.



It is worthy of notice that imitation by inversion is far more frequently met with in a minor key than in a major.

283. A third kind of imitation is that *with reversed accents*—that is to say, that the notes which in the pattern are on accented beats are in the imitation on unaccented, and *vice versa*; e.g.—

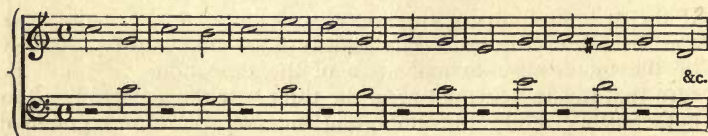


Here it will be seen that the lower part is a strict imitation of the upper at the distance of a fourth below, but with all the accents reversed. This kind of imitation is frequently called by the name given to it by the old theorists—imitation *per arsin et thesin*. *Arsis* is a Greek word, meaning “raising,” and *Thesis* another Greek word, meaning “putting down,” or, as we say nowadays, the “up-beat” and the “down-beat,” in other words the unaccented and accented parts of the bar.*

284. Two other varieties of imitation are not infrequent—that *by augmentation*, in which the notes of the imitation are double the length of those of the pattern, and that *by diminution*, in which the pattern is imitated in notes of half its length. It is evident that more than one of these varieties can be combined; for instance, an imitation may be by augmentation and contrary motion, or by inversion and with reversed accents, and so on.

285. *Invertible* imitation is that which is written in double counterpoint with its pattern, so that it can appear either above or below it. It will be seen that the little example given in § 283 is written in double counterpoint in the octave.

286. One of the most important kinds of imitation—*canonic*—will be dealt with in subsequent chapters; but, in addition to the varieties already spoken of, there are two others, of little or no practical use, which should be mentioned for the sake of completeness. These are *interrupted* and *retrograde* imitation. The former is made by putting rests between each note of the imitation, as in the following example by Cherubini—

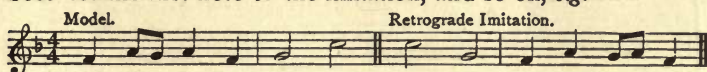


This is evidently a mere curiosity; and we are unable to give any instances of its employment by the great masters.

287. *Retrograde* imitation, which is occasionally met with in canons, is that in which the notes of the subject propounded are

* In old music the term “*per arsin et thesin*” is also occasionally used as equivalent to “by contrary motion”—i.e., the one part rising as the other falls. See Hawkins’s “*History of Music*,” Chapter LXVII.

given in reversed order—that is to say, the last note of the model becomes the first note of the imitation, and so on, *e.g.*—



It is clear that contrary motion can also be combined with this species of imitation. It is sometimes called *imitatio cancrizans*—"crab-like" imitation, which walks backwards, as a crab is popularly supposed to do.

288. *Partial* imitation is when only a part, and not the whole, of the model is imitated; the name may also be appropriately applied to such imitations as those seen in the third and fourth bars of our example to § 276, where the intervals of the model are not exactly reproduced, but the *rhythm* is preserved, so that the general resemblance of the imitation to the model is clearly maintained.

289. *Close* imitation is that in which the imitation enters (as in the example to § 283) immediately after the commencement of the model. With the ordinary use of words, it would seem as if to speak of a passage being "closely" imitated were much the same as to speak of its being "exactly" imitated; but it is very important for the student to notice the distinction that exists in the technical use of these two terms. "Exact" imitation is the same as "strict" (§ 277), and refers to the nature of the intervals; "close" imitation has nothing to do with the intervals, and refers only to the distance of time at which the reply commences.

290. Though the examples we have hitherto given have mostly been in two parts only, the student must understand that imitation may be in *any* number of parts. This will be seen in the illustrative passages we shall give directly from the works of the great masters. Very frequently, also, imitation between some of the voices is accompanied, like double counterpoint, by free independent parts.

291. We now give a series of examples from the works of the great composers, containing specimens of the various kinds of imitation described in this chapter; it would, of course, be superfluous to illustrate every possible variety. We begin with an example by Bach of imitation in the unison and octave—

V. 1. J. S. BACH. Concerto in G.

V. 2.

V. 3, Viola.

'Cello e Basso.

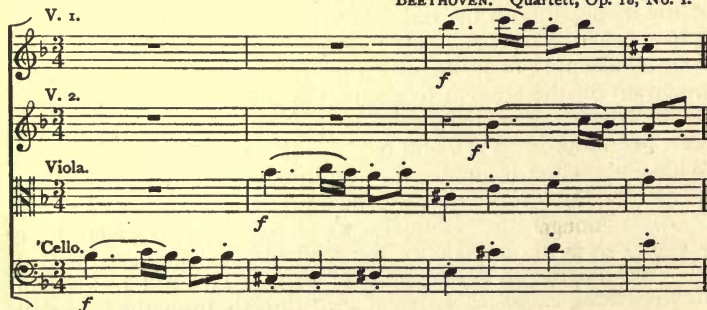
The image shows four staves of musical notation for J.S. Bach's Concerto in G. The first staff is for Violin 1 (V. 1.), the second for Violin 2 (V. 2.), the third for Viola (V. 3, Viola.), and the fourth for Cello and Bass ('Cello e Basso.). The key signature is G major (one sharp) and the time signature is 12/8. The notation shows a complex interplay of imitation between the parts, with various rhythmic patterns and melodic lines.



The subject announced by the first violin is here imitated half a bar later by the second, and this at the beginning of the second bar by the third violin and the viola, all these entries being in unison. The final entry is in the lower octave.

292. It is not very often that a figure is thus imitated twice in succession in the unison. More frequently each new entry is in a different octave, as in the following passage—

BEETHOVEN. Quartett, Op. 18, No. 1.



Here, as in our last example, each imitation begins on the same degree of the scale, but no two consecutive entries are in the same octave. In the second violin part will be noticed an example of imitation *per arsin et thesin* (§ 283).

293. Our next example is of a different kind—

HANDEL. "Solomon."



Here we have in the two upper parts imitation in the fourth below; the imitation of the upper by the lower of these two voices commences at (a). The student will learn later that the imitation here is so continuous as to make the passage into a short canon; we have quoted it in this place as a good example of imitation with a free bass part added (§ 290).

294. In the following passage

CHERUBINI. "Medea."



a short figure, first announced in the bass, is imitated at various intervals; it will be seen that with some of the entries the imitation is only partial.

295. We next give a sequential imitation in the second above upon a pedal bass—

V. 1.

HAYDN. Symphony in G, No. 51.

V. 2.

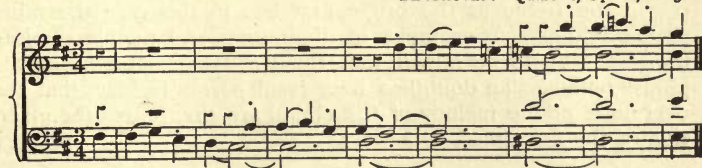
Viola.

Bassi.



296. The following extract from one of Beethoven's quartetts

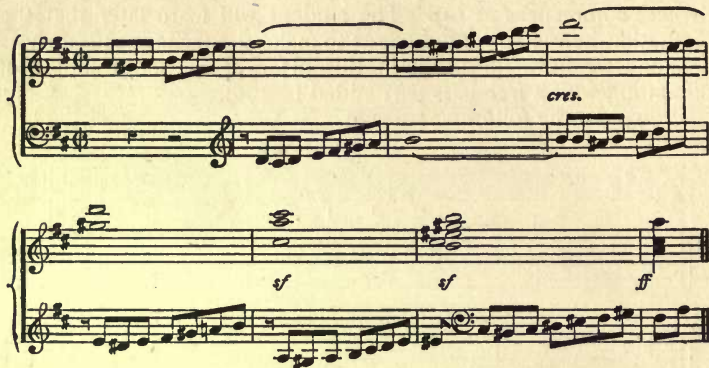
BEETHOVEN. Quartett, Op. 18, No 3.



shows imitation at various distances. It will be seen that there is no regularity in the intervals of entry of the different parts.

297. Our next illustration is somewhat different—

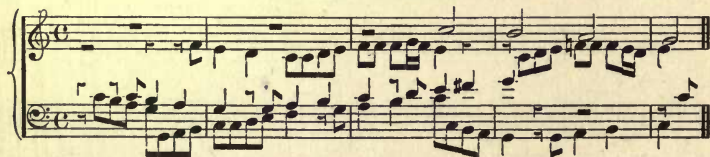
BEETHOVEN. Sonata, Op. 10, No. 3.



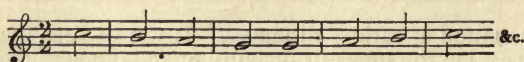
Here the figure announced in the first bar is imitated in the fifth below; it is then repeated in the upper part, on which follow three successive imitations, each in the fifth below the preceding, while the last entry is at the sixth below.

298. All the examples hitherto given have been of direct imitation; we now give specimens of other varieties—

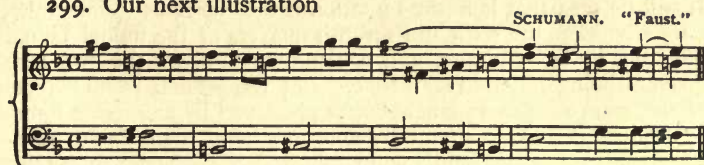
J. S. BACH. Organ Prelude on "Ach Gott und Herr."



This passage deserves close examination. The subject itself appears in the tenor at the commencement, accompanied by itself in diminution in the bass, first direct and then twice in an inverted form. In the alto we have the subject first direct, and then inverted and diminished; lastly, the treble enters with the subject in augmentation. It would also be possible here to regard the treble as the original model; in this case the other parts would give us examples of diminution and double diminution. It should be added that the frequent treatment of the phrase by inversion doubtless here results from the fact that the next notes of the melody of the choral are themselves the inversion of the first notes—

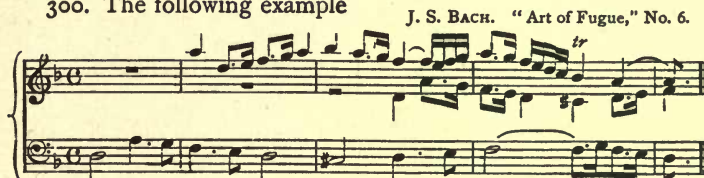


299. Our next illustration



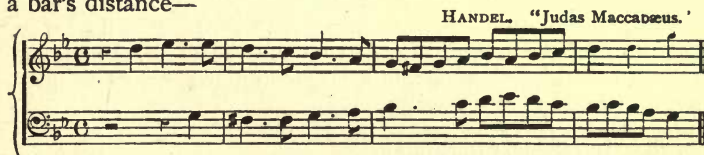
shows a simple imitation in direct motion by augmentation, and requires no further explanation. The middle voice is, of course, free.

300. The following example



shows in the second bar the imitation of the subject announced in the bass by diminution and inversion; while at the third bar we see the subject diminished, but in its direct form. Observe that the imitation by contrary motion is according to the scheme given in § 282.

301. We next show close imitation by contrary motion at half a bar's distance—

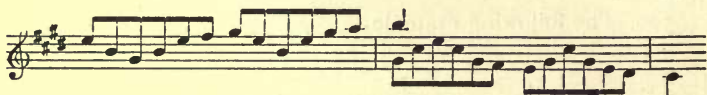


Though the imitation begins only half a bar after the model, we have not here an example of the "*per arsin et thesin*" spoken of above, because, in consequence of the rather slow time of the movement, there are really two accents in the bar; thus the second notes of the model and imitation alike come upon accented beats, though the one is a stronger and the other a weaker accent.

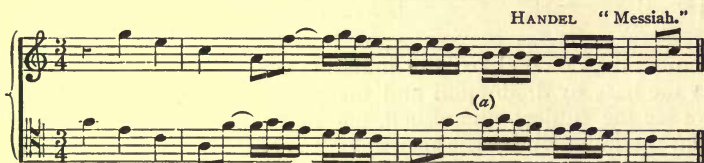
302. It was said above that imitation by inversion was rarer in a major than in a minor key. The following passage is an example of the former—



It will be seen that here the imitation is not strict as to intervals, a tone between the sixth and seventh quavers of the model being imitated by a semitone, and a semitone between the two last quavers being imitated by a tone. But the general resemblance of the two passages is much better preserved by answering tonic by dominant and dominant by tonic, as here, than would have been the case had Mendelssohn followed the scheme shown in § 280, and made the imitation strict, in which case the reply would have suggested the key of C sharp minor.

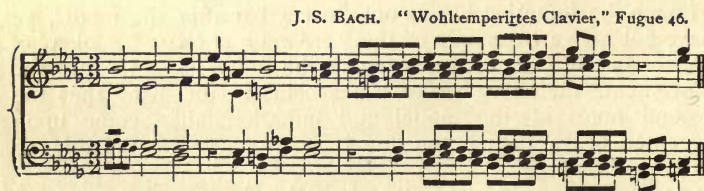


303. In the following well-known passage from the "Messiah"



is seen a good example of close imitation *per arsin et thesin* in triple time, and also of *partial* imitation (§ 288). It will be seen, that from (a) the treble ceases to imitate the tenor, though the composer, had he chosen, could have continued the strict imitation to the end of the passage.

304. In our next illustration



there is a double imitation *per arsin et thesin*. The two upper parts are imitated by contrary motion, at a distance of one minim, by the two lower.

305. The great fugue which forms the finale of Mozart's so-called "Jupiter" symphony is full of masterly specimens of close imitation. For our final example we select one short passage from this movement, giving only the string parts—

MOZART. Symphony in C.

The image shows a musical score for Mozart's Symphony in C. It consists of two systems of four staves each. The first system is labeled 'V. 1.', 'V. 2.', 'Viola.', and 'Bassi.'. The music is in C major, 4/4 time. The first system shows the beginning of a melodic theme in the first violin, which is then imitated by the second violin, viola, and basses in a continuous fashion. The second system continues this imitation, showing the theme moving through the parts in a canon-like fashion.

Here the imitation is so continuous in all the parts that (as we shall see in the next chapter) the passage is really a *canon*. The subject given by the first violins is imitated in the octave below, at one beat's distance (*per arsin et thesin*), by the second violins; the basses then take the theme in the twelfth (fifth) below, being imitated in the octave above by the violas; and this close imitation, at one minim's distance between all the parts, is continued not only to the end of our extract but beyond it. The whole movement deserves to be carefully studied.

306. The student who has thoroughly mastered the contents of this chapter will have a sufficient insight into the subject of which we have been treating, to begin to practise writing imitations for himself. His exercises for this purpose should be of two kinds. He should first try to invent short figures for himself, and to write phrases of from eight to sixteen bars, introducing the model in turn in the different voices, at various intervals, and by contrary motion, augmentation, diminution, &c. He will then find it extremely useful to take some of the chorals given in the *Additional Exercises to Counterpoint*, and write imitations above or below these, according to the voice in which they are placed. The way in which he should commence this is explained

in *Counterpoint*, § 475. He can either use figures of his own invention, or he can take material from the choral itself, as in the example given in § 298 of this chapter. (See also the fine example from Bach in *Counterpoint*, § 567.)

307. The study of imitation is not only a valuable preparation for that of Canon, but it is absolutely indispensable for any one who wishes to write a fugue, of which it is a most important ingredient. This will be clearly shown in the next volume of the present series. Its utility, however, by no means ends here. The examples we have given, especially those from more modern works, show its great value in imparting unity of character to a composition by means of thematic development. This point will be dealt with in a later volume of this series.

CHAPTER XI.

THE ROUND.

308. Among the examples of imitation given in our last chapter were some which were continued for a considerable length. Imitation which is maintained continuously, either throughout a whole piece, or at least through an entire phrase, is said to be *canonic*; and if a composition is so written that the various parts imitate one another throughout, such a piece is called a CANON.

309. The student will remember that in Double Counterpoint at any other interval than the octave, while the names of the intervals remain the same in the inversion as in the pattern, their quality is frequently changed—minor being substituted for major, and *vice versa*. The same is found with regard to canons, as indeed was seen in the last chapter with imitation in general (§ 278).

310. Canons may be either *Finite* or *Infinite*. A finite canon is that in which the imitation is discontinued as soon as the pattern has been once repeated in each of the voices taking part in the canon. If, however, the close of the pattern is immediately followed by the repetition in the same voice of its commencement, so that the last part of the subject in the imitating voice or voices accompanies the first part of the subject in the leading voice, the canon is *infinite*. We shall meet with examples of both as we proceed.

311. As a canon is nothing more than continuous imitation, it is evident that there can be as many different varieties of canon as of imitation itself. Thus it may be strict or free as to interval, direct or inverted, augmented or diminished, or even retrograde. It is also possible to combine the different varieties; but in such cases the imitation is often so totally unlike the pattern that the

canon becomes one merely for the eye, and not for the ear. For instance, in the following example by Kirnberger,



a comparison of the lower voice with the upper shows that we have here an infinite canon by augmentation and contrary motion. But will anybody who listens to this composition (if it deserves the name) maintain for a moment that he can *hear* any resemblance between the two parts? Music is meant for the ear, not for the eye; and, however ingenious these puzzles may be, they are not music. As this volume is meant to be practical in its aim, we shall not waste time over the discussion of such problems as these. Life, at all events in the nineteenth century, is not long enough; and students who wish to study such subjects must be referred to some of the old and curious treatises on theory; our space will be far more profitably employed in teaching what may be found actually useful in composition.

312. A canon may not only be at any interval, but at any distance of time. The simplest and easiest kind of canon to compose is that which in this country is known as a *Round*; we shall therefore begin by showing how this is to be written. A Round is a canon in the unison—that is to say, that each voice in turn begins upon the same note—which differs from other canons in two respects. In the first place, the parts all enter at equal distances of time; if the second voice commences four bars after the first, the third will commence four bars after the second, and so on. With other canons there is no such restriction; the distances of entry may be, and very often are, irregular. The second distinctive characteristic of the round is, that each voice completes a musical phrase or sentence, before the next one enters, the phrases being usually of two, four, or eight bars' length, though they are occasionally even longer.

313. Let us suppose, by way of illustration, that the round is for three voices—this being one of the commonest forms. The whole of the music must then consist of three phrases of equal length. The first voice begins by singing the first phrase alone:

having finished this, it goes on to the second phrase, while the next voice enters with the first phrase, thus making two-part harmony. The third voice then takes the first phrase, while the second voice has the second, and the first voice the third. The three-part harmony is now complete. The first voice, having now sung the whole music, returns to the first phrase, while the second takes the third phrase, and the third the second. We here see why the name of "Round" is given to this form of canon. It can be continued as long as desired; but this should be at least until the voice that last enters has sung the whole of the music once.

314. A diagram will help to make this clearer to the student. Let us call the three phrases of the Canon A, B, and C, and put the part for each voice on a separate line, placing the phrases to be sung simultaneously under each other—

1st Voice . .	A, B, C, A, B, C,	}	&c.
2nd Voice . .	A, B, C, A, B,		
3rd Voice . .	A, B, C, A,		

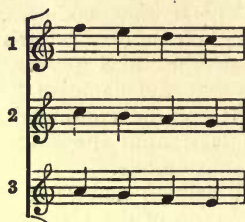
The music of a round is occasionally written out in full, as it would be in the above scheme; but it is more usual to write out the harmony in score, placing the phrases one above another, and indicating at the beginning and end of the lines the order in which they are to be sung, thus—

JOHN HILTON

The figure at the end of each line here shows which line of the round is to be sung next. It will be seen that here the parts cross freely; to this there is no objection in rounds, which do not really contain upper and lower parts, as each singer is in turn performing the highest, lowest, or middle part of the harmony.

315. There are two different ways of composing a round. We may write the three parts simultaneously, as if we were writing a three-part florid counterpoint; and to the student who is sufficiently advanced to undertake the study of canon at all this method of composition would probably present no great difficulty. It is, however, open to the objection that he would be very apt to think only of the three-part harmony, and to forget that before the third voice has made its first entry, the

two part harmony between the first and second voices must be correct, though of course not complete. For example, if he were writing a series of sixths in three parts, he would naturally arrange them thus—



This would be the usual disposition for the voices ; but it will be seen that when only the two upper parts are singing together—that is to say, before the entry of the third voice—there will be a most atrocious series of fourths ; it will therefore be necessary to arrange the parts in the following way—



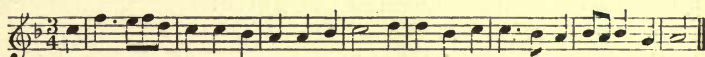
It is mostly advisable in rounds to give the real bass of the harmony in the second, rather than in the third or fourth line.

316. A preferable method of procedure is the following. Begin by writing the first phrase of the round. In composing this it will evidently be necessary to carry in the mind at least the outline of the accompanying harmonies. It by no means follows that the phrase first written will be the highest part throughout when the piece is completed ; because in a canon in the unison the parts are always allowed to cross freely. To the phrase first composed must now be added a second part, which will make a correct bass to it. It would also be possible, though less usual, to write the first phrase in such a way as that it would form a correct bass to a melody which would be subsequently written above it in the second part. A third part can then be added, filling up as far as possible the harmony of which the first and second parts necessarily give only the outline. The number of parts may sometimes be increased to four, or even more ; but every additional voice above three makes the composer's task

more difficult, owing to the limited range of the harmony, and the resulting close position of the voices.

317. It will be seen that this species of composition is in reality a variety of free counterpoint—that is to say, it is a combination of as many different and independent melodies as there are parts; and this leads us to impress on the student the especial importance of giving melodic interest to each phrase of the round. It is not sufficient that the harmony should be pure; if this be all that is aimed at, the music will probably be as uninteresting to sing as to listen to. Look at the excellent example by Hilton given in § 314, and observe, with all its simplicity the absolute individuality of each part. This is a point which in the composition of a round should never be overlooked.

318. We will now write a round, in order to show the student how he is to set to work. We first compose a simple sentence of eight bars to commence with—



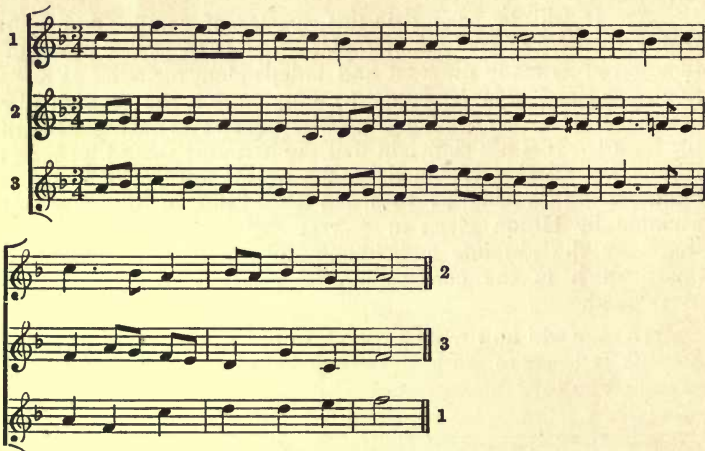
The only point to notice about this melody is, that we have made it end on the mediant, instead of on the tonic, so as to get two-part harmony for the last note when the second voice is added, instead of finishing on the unison.

319. Our next process is to add a second part. The principles by which we should be guided in selecting our harmonies have been explained in *Counterpoint*, Chapter XVI. Obviously various harmonizings are possible; we select a simple and natural one—

(a)

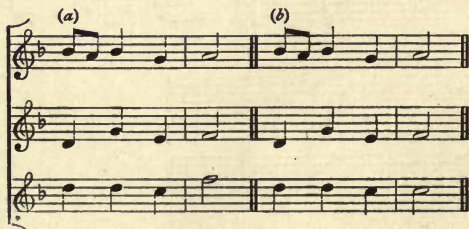
At (a) we have given the root rather than the third of the dominant chord, because the latter would have necessitated a rather low position for the third voice, which we intend here to carry above the first, as will be seen directly.

320. We now add a third voice, filling up the harmony, and the round is complete—



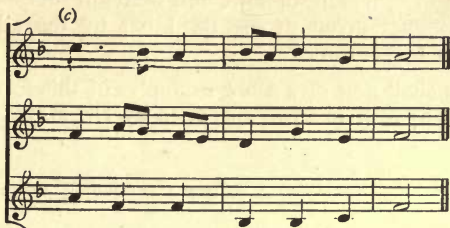
In the first and second bars will be seen an illustration (intentionally introduced) of what was said in § 315. Had the third part been written as the second, the harmony here would have been horrible, as the student will readily see. But as the fourths below the upper part are never heard without the thirds below them, the effect is unobjectionable. It should also be remarked that passages in thirds for two parts, as here between the second and third voices, are often to be met with. Care must be taken that they are not so continuous as to destroy altogether the independent character of the two parts.

321. On examining the cadence the student will now see why C, and not E, was written for the second voice. Had the latter note been chosen, C must have been the note for the third part, and the cadence, however written, would have been less satisfactory. We will try—



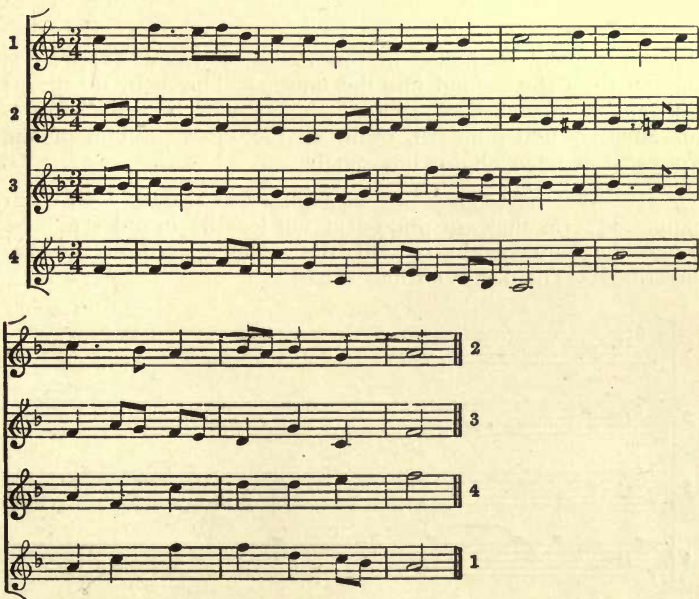
The cadence at (a) is evidently bad, because of the hidden octaves. That at (b) is somewhat better, but the repetition of the note C, and the ending with the fifth of the chord at the top

can hardly be recommended. If we alter the end of the third voice, so as to keep it below the others,



the cadence, though not wrong, is weaker than that we have chosen, because of the repetition of the B in the lowest part. The melody of the third voice is also far less good than as we have written it.

322. If we now try to add a fourth part to this already complete piece, our difficulties will be considerably increased. There is not much room left for a new voice. Clearly it cannot be either a new upper or a new lower part throughout, or it will exceed the range of the voice. It will have for the most part to thread its way in and out among the others, and some care will be required to give it an independent melody. In many places it must necessarily be in unison with one of the other parts. It is, however, by no means impossible to add such a part: here is one way of doing it—



The compass of the voice part is here rather large, but it is not beyond that of a mezzo-soprano, and therefore allowable. Note the new character given to the third bar by the addition of a fresh bass to the harmony.

323. We shall now give a few examples of this form of canon. Our first will be a well-known specimen by Dr. Hayes—

DR. HAYES.

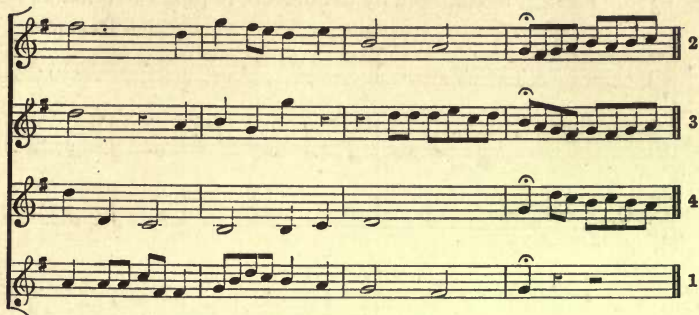
The musical score for Canon by Dr. Hayes is written for three voices. It consists of two systems of three staves each. The first system shows the initial entries of the three voices. The second system shows the voices continuing, with the first staff labeled '2', the second labeled '3', and the third labeled '1'. A note in the second staff of the second system is marked with '(a)', indicating a point of interest in the canon.

The only point to notice in this round is that at (a) we see motion from the second into the unison. This is by no means uncommon in such compositions where the second (as here) is an auxiliary note; indeed, owing to the close position of the voices, it is often almost unavoidable.

324. We next give two examples by Mozart. In their published form they are printed at full length; in order to save space they are here given in the condensed form already described. The first is for four voices—

MOZART.

The musical score for Canon by Mozart is written for four voices. It consists of two systems of four staves each. The first system shows the initial entries of the four voices. The second system shows the voices continuing, with the first staff labeled '1', the second labeled '2', the third labeled '3', and the fourth labeled '4'.



Notice in this piece the very free way in which the parts cross. There is not one of the voices which does not, in the course of the canon, cross with each of the others. The pause (\frown) at the beginning of the last bar does not here indicate, as usual, that the notes over which it is placed are to be dwelt upon; it is a very common way of showing the notes on which the final close is to be made.

325. The following example for six voices

MOZART.

is instructive as showing the management of a large number of parts in a close position. The first four bars form a kind of *canto fermo*. Observe the little piece of imitation in the second above in the fifth and sixth lines.

326. Our next illustration, by Beethoven, requires no remarks—

BEETHOVEN.

The musical score for Canon No. 326 by Beethoven is presented in two systems. The first system consists of three staves, each beginning with a treble clef and a key signature of two flats (B-flat and E-flat). The first staff is marked with a '1' at the beginning. The second system consists of three staves, each ending with a double bar line and a repeat sign. The first staff of the second system is marked with a '2' at the end, the second with a '3', and the third with a '1'.

327. The round we shall next give is especially interesting as containing the germ of the favourite Allegretto of Beethoven's eighth symphony. It was composed for Maelzel, the inventor of the metronome—

BEETHOVEN

The musical score for Canon No. 327 by Beethoven is presented in two systems. The first system consists of four staves, each beginning with a treble clef and a key signature of two flats (B-flat and E-flat). The first staff is marked with a '1' at the beginning. The second system consists of four staves, each ending with a double bar line and a repeat sign. The first staff of the second system is marked with a '2' at the end, the second with a '3', the third with a '4', and the fourth with a '1'.

328. The last example of this species of canon which we shall give is an excellent specimen by Beethoven—

BEETHOVEN.

The musical score consists of two systems of six staves each. The first system (staves 1-6) shows the initial entry of the six voices. The second system (staves 7-12) shows the continuation of the canon, with voices 2 through 6 in the first system and voice 1 in the second system. The music is in 4/4 time with a key signature of two sharps (F# and C#).

Here we see in the second part a free imitation of the first, and in the fifth a partial imitation of the fourth. The consecutive unisons between the fifth and sixth voices are most probably an oversight.

329. Sometimes a canon of the kind now under notice is written with instrumental accompaniment of a more or less independent description. A familiar illustration of this variety is Cherubini's popular canon, "Perfida Clori," which is accompanied by arpeggios on the piano throughout. The piece being so well known and readily accessible, it will be sufficient here to refer to it.

330. We occasionally meet with a round written for mixed voices—that is to say, as a canon *in the unison and octave*. In such a case it will be evidently necessary that the parts shall be written in double counterpoint in the octave. A very fine example of this kind is to be found in the second act of Cherubini's "Faniska"; as the opera is very little known, we present the movement here. It has an independent orchestral accompaniment throughout; but, to save space, we shall merely give a figured bass, to indicate the harmonies. The canon is preceded by a symphony of eighteen bars, which it is not necessary to quote—

CHERUBINI. "Faniska."

Andantino.

SOPRANO 1mo.

SOPRANO 2do.

TENOR.

ACCOMPANIMENT.

6 7

6 6 6 7

6 6 6 7

6 6

The first system of musical notation consists of four staves. The top staff is in treble clef with a key signature of two flats (B-flat and E-flat). The second staff is also in treble clef but contains whole rests. The third staff is in alto clef with a key signature of two flats. The bottom staff is in bass clef with a key signature of two flats. The music features a mix of eighth and sixteenth notes, with some triplets. Below the bottom staff, there are fingerings: a '6' under the first measure, and a sequence of '#5', 'b5', '6', '5', '6', '6', '7', '4', and 'b' under the subsequent measures.

The second system of musical notation consists of four staves, continuing the piece. The top staff is in treble clef with a key signature of two flats. The second staff is also in treble clef but contains whole rests. The third staff is in alto clef with a key signature of two flats. The bottom staff is in bass clef with a key signature of two flats. The music continues with various rhythmic patterns. Below the bottom staff, there are fingerings: a '6' under the eighth measure and a '7' under the ninth measure.

The third system of musical notation consists of four staves. The top staff is in treble clef with a key signature of two flats. The second staff is also in treble clef but contains whole rests. The third staff is in alto clef with a key signature of two flats. The bottom staff is in bass clef with a key signature of two flats. The music continues with various rhythmic patterns. Below the bottom staff, there are fingerings: a '6' under the eighth measure, and a sequence of '7', 'b2', '8', 'b3', and '6' under the subsequent measures.

The fourth system of musical notation consists of four staves. The top staff is in treble clef with a key signature of two flats. The second staff is also in treble clef but contains whole rests. The third staff is in alto clef with a key signature of two flats. The bottom staff is in bass clef with a key signature of two flats. The music continues with various rhythmic patterns. Below the bottom staff, there are fingerings: a sequence of '5', '6', '6', '7', '4', and 'b' under the measures.

First system of musical notation (measures 1-4). The system consists of four staves: two treble clefs and two bass clefs. The key signature is one flat (B-flat). The notation includes various rhythmic values and accidentals. Below the staves, the fingering numbers 7, 6, 6, 5 are written under the first staff, and 5, 6 are written under the fourth staff.

Second system of musical notation (measures 5-8). The system consists of four staves. Below the staves, the fingering numbers 7, 6, 7, #5, 6, 5, 6, 6, 7 are written under the first staff, and 4, b5, 4 are written under the fourth staff.

Third system of musical notation (measures 9-12). The system consists of four staves. This system contains no fingering numbers.

Fourth system of musical notation (measures 13-16). The system consists of four staves. Below the staves, the fingering numbers 7, 6, #5, 8, b7, 9, 6, 6, 7 are written under the first staff, and 4, 4 are written under the fourth staff.

Let it be noticed that the canon is here continued until the voice that last enters (the second soprano) has sung the whole of the music (§ 313). Observe also the great increase of variety resulting from one of the parts being an octave lower than the others, the consequence being that at each repetition a different position of the harmony is obtained. The full effect of the music is also much enhanced here by the varied orchestral accompaniment, which is not given in our quotation, and which is different on each fresh entry of the theme.

331. Though it is not often that we find a complete round of the kind just given introduced in the course of a large work, there is a somewhat similar species of canon by no means uncommon, a description of which will appropriately conclude this chapter. In this form the music is carried on strictly as a canon in the unison and octave, mostly with a free orchestral accompaniment; but the canon ceases as soon as the voice which last enters has completed the first phrase. In this form the voice that commences is the only one by which the entire canon is sung. As familiar examples of this kind of canon, may be named that in the first act of Beethoven's "*Fidelio*," and "*Mi manca la voce*" in Rossini's "*Mosè in Egitto*." Excellent specimens may also be found in Schubert's Masses—the "*Benedictus*" of the Masses in F and G, and the "*Et incarnatus*" of the Mass in E flat. We do not quote these, as they would only be further illustrations similar to that which we have given from Cherubini.

CHAPTER XII.

TWO-PART CANONS.

332. The canons treated of in the last chapter, though not infrequently met with as independent compositions, are seldom employed incidentally. We have now to speak of other varieties of the canon, more often used, and perhaps on the whole more useful. Though rounds are seldom written in less than three parts, other canons are very often in only two; and as these are simpler in construction, and therefore easier to compose, than those with a larger number of voices, we shall treat of them first.

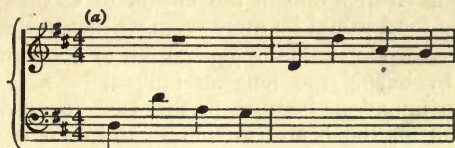
333. The most important difference between the form of the canons now to be noticed and that of rounds is that in the former the imitation generally enters *at a much shorter interval of time after the pattern*—almost invariably before the close of the first phrase. The entry is for the most part about one or two bars after the commencement, and not infrequently the canon commences in the course of the first bar.

334. We said in the last chapter (§ 311) that there were many possible varieties of canon; by far the most useful is that by direct imitation; the canon by inversion is also not uncommon; but canons by augmentation and diminution are of little practical utility. We shall therefore confine our attention chiefly to the first kind, adding a few words on the others for the sake of completeness.

335. To the student who is fairly skilful in writing florid counterpoint, the composition of a *finite* canon by direct imitation offers not the slightest difficulty, whatever be the interval of imitation, or the distance of time of entry. The method of procedure is simplicity itself. All that is necessary is to write the two parts in short sections alternately. An example will make this perfectly clear.

336. Supposing that we wish to write a canon in the octave at one bar's distance. It is immaterial whether we begin with the treble or bass; in the former case the canon will be in the octave below, and in the latter in the octave above. We will commence with the bass, and, as the canon is to be at one bar's

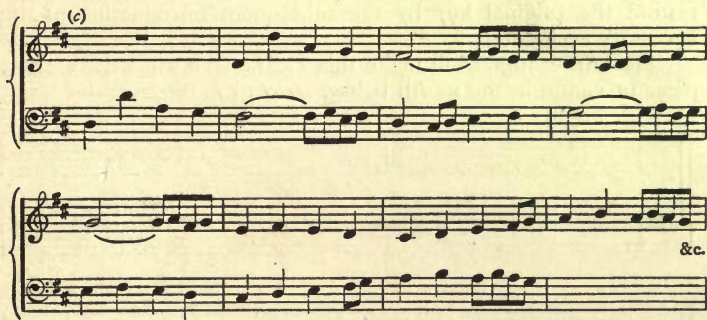
distance, we write only the first bar in the bass, copying this an octave higher for the treble of the second bar, thus—



We next add a counterpoint in the bass to the second bar, placing it then an octave higher as the treble of the third bar—



It will be seen that all this is as easy as possible. We give a few bars of continuation for this canon, which, it is evident, could go on for a thousand bars, if desired—



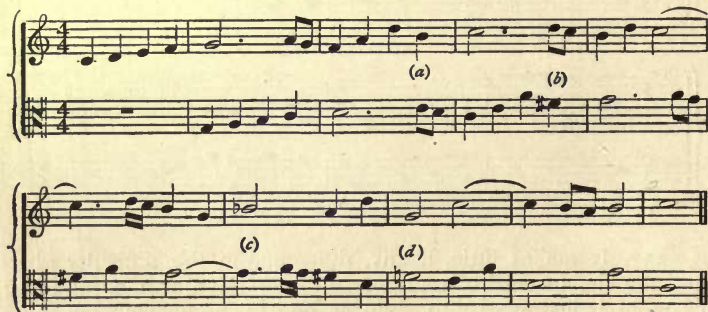
337. It makes little, if any, difference in the difficulty whatever be the interval of reply; a canon in the fourth or fifth, for example, is just as easy to write as one in the octave; but there are a few points to be noticed with regard to the interval selected. It must be remembered that if the canon is at a very close interval—*e.g.*, in the unison or second—the parts are sure to cross. We saw this repeatedly in the case of the round in the last chapter. Here, however, it was not objectionable, because the leading voice enunciated a complete phrase before the next part entered, and the subject could therefore be clearly distinguished. But in the canons of which we are now speaking, where the second part mostly enters very soon after the first, it will be

difficult, if not impossible, to distinguish the subjects if there is much crossing. A canon in the octave or ninth is therefore much more usual than one in the unison or second, and even a canon in the third would be more often written in the tenth.

338. It is also advisable in general not to make the canon too straggling, by having too long an interval of time before the entry of the imitation, because in this case the canon is much more difficult for the hearer to follow; the clear recollection of the passage which is being imitated will probably have become blurred, if not altogether effaced by the interposition of other matter. An interval of two, or at most three, bars will generally be quite enough; many of the best canons are at a bar's distance, or even less.

339. It is important to remember that a canon in any other interval than the unison or octave will be free as to intervals (§ 277); if not, the music will be in two keys at the same time. The only exception to this general rule is in the case of canons in the fourth or fifth above or below; in these it is *possible* (though by no means necessary) to use strict imitation. But it is needful to observe that if this be done we shall probably introduce transient modulations into the key of the dominant or subdominant, as the case may be; and care must be taken to restore the original key by the subsequent introduction of the necessary accidentals.

340. An example will make this clear. We will write a short piece of canon in the fourth below, *strict as to intervals*—



At (a) the interval of the minor third requires to be answered with the same interval at (b). The F# here evidently takes the music into the key of G. To return to the original key, it is necessary to introduce Bb in the upper part, as at (c), that its imitation at (d) may give us Fb, restoring the key of C. Similarly, had the canon been in the fifth below, instead of the fourth, F, the subdominant of C, would have been answered by Bb; it would then have been needful to introduce a chromatic

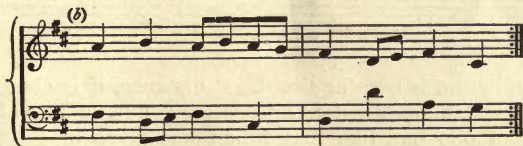
F# in the upper part, that its imitation might restore B, the leading note of the key. Such devices as these, though sometimes practicable, are often difficult to manage, and in any case hamper the composer so much that it is usually better to write canons in the fourth or fifth free as to intervals. It would be also possible to retain the strictness of the imitation by carefully avoiding the introduction of the leading note in the pattern of a canon in the fifth above or fourth below, and the subdominant for a canon of the fourth above or fifth below.

341. The composition of an *Infinite* canon (§ 310) is considerably more difficult than that of a finite one. Till we reach the point where the leading part is about to begin the repetition of the subject, all is plain sailing; we proceed exactly as with a finite canon; but what the student will mostly find troublesome is what may be termed "making the join" neatly. For the conclusion of the subject must be so constructed as to form a good counterpoint to what has preceded it, and also, when placed in the answering voice, it must be fitted for accompanying the first part of the subject in the leading voice. To write such a passage sometimes requires a good deal of planning. To illustrate this, we will make the little canon in the octave given at (c) of § 336 infinite.

342. We give the last two bars of the canon as they stand. The bass is the leading part, and will therefore be the first to commence the repetition. As we intend this to take place in the following bar, we add this bar to our quotation—

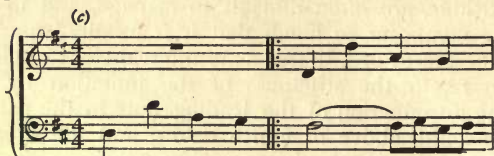


By examining this sketch, the student will see exactly what is the problem that he has to solve. The second bar of the upper part is fixed, as also is the third bar of the lower part; and he has to invent a counterpoint which will equally well serve as a bass to the second bar and as an upper part to the third. In the present case the task is very easy—



The double bar with the marks of the repeat shows that here the

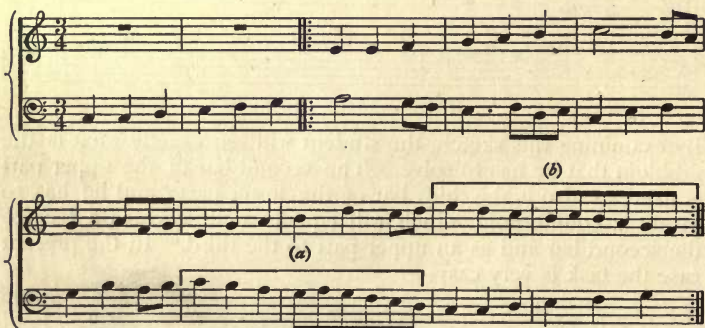
piece recommences ; but it will now be needful also to give the sign for repetition before the second bar of the canon, thus—



Very frequently a few bars of *coda*, not in canon, are added after the repeat in order to bring the piece to a close.

343. It will be seen that the completion of an infinite canon in the way just described somewhat resembles the writing of a counterpoint on two *canti fermi* at once. If, however, the canon be at any other interval than the octave, the problem becomes rather more complicated ; for it is then necessary to invent as the last part of the subject a counterpoint which not only fits the preceding, but which, *when transposed at the proper interval*, will fit the commencement of the subject. There is, unfortunately, no royal road for the attainment of this end, nor can any definite rules be given for the purpose. It is here that the student's contrapuntal knowledge and inventive skill will be found most valuable, and it is precisely those who are most at home with free counterpoint who will most easily overcome the difficulties here to be met with.

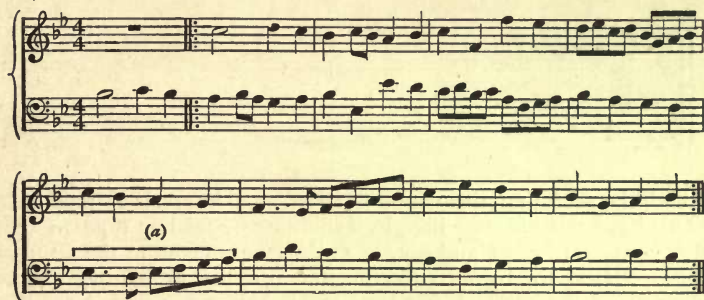
344. We will now give a few short examples of infinite canons at various intervals, to show the student how to write them. We will first write a canon in the third (tenth) above—



As the imitation is here at two bars' distance, it is clear that the canon must be composed in alternate sections of two bars each, and not of one bar, like that which was given in § 336. The bars forming the "join" are seen at (a). These had to be so contrived as that they would also serve when transposed a tenth

higher, as a counterpoint to the subject, as at (*b*). Attention will also be required to the flow of the melody; here the second bar of (*a*) had to connect naturally with the C on which the subject begins.

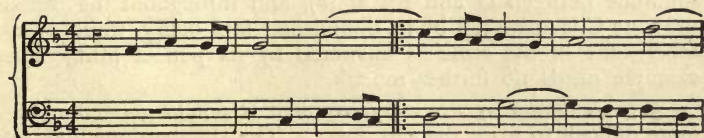
345. Our next canon is in the ninth above at one bar's distance—

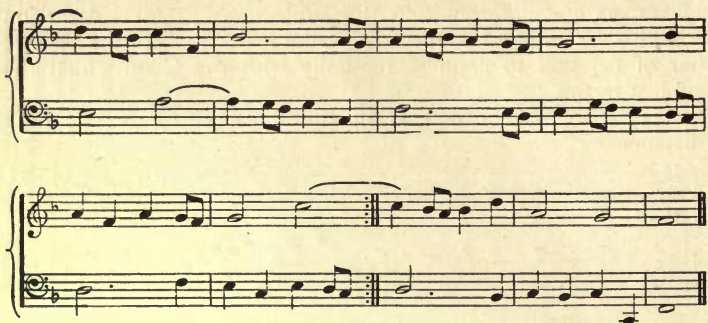


It is not always necessary to make the join exactly before the commencement of the repetition; sometimes it will be more convenient to work from both ends, and make the connection somewhere in the middle. This was done in the present case; it was decided to have eight bars within the repeat, so as to form a complete musical sentence; the first five bars of the canon were then written as they stand; the first bar of the bass was repeated as the last bar, and a counterpoint written above this which would make a good connection with the next bar of the upper part. The process hitherto followed was then reversed. The last bar of the upper part was transposed a ninth lower for the penultimate bar of the bass; and so the canon was worked from both ends (like the piercing of the Mont Cenis tunnel), the actual join being made at (*a*). In writing an infinite canon the join may be made wherever it is found easiest.

346. We spoke just now of having eight bars within the repeat, for the sake of making a complete musical sentence. It will be well for the student to try to get some kind of symmetry and form in his canons, and not to allow them to go meandering aimlessly along. At the same time, it is only right to add that the examples we are now giving must not be judged as compositions; they are only exercises, and have no claim to any higher musical merit than that of correctness.

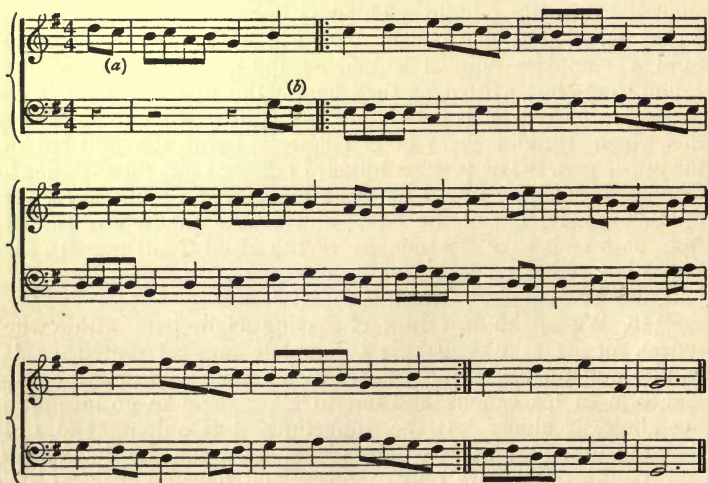
347. The following canon is in the fourth below—





It will be seen that this canon is strict as to intervals throughout. This has been effected here by avoiding the leading note in the upper voice (§ 340), and not, as in the canon given in the section just referred to, by its subsequent contradiction by the minor seventh of the key. A few bars of free close are added to this and the following canon.

348. As the last example was strict, we will write the next, in the fifth below, free as to intervals—



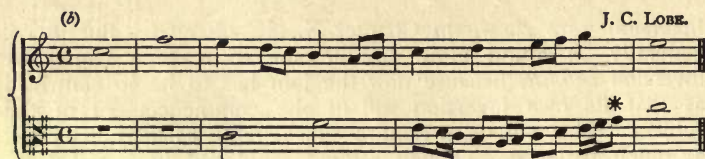
Here the tone between D and C at (a) is answered by the semitone between G and F \sharp at (b), and throughout the canon the note C is answered by its diminished fifth below, while every other note of the scale is answered by its perfect fifth. The example needs no further remark.

349. A canon by inverse movement is not in general much more difficult to write than in direct. The different methods of

inversion were shown in Chapter X., §§ 280–282. But it will generally be found more troublesome to make a canon by inversion *infinite*, because now the join has to be so contrived as that its own inversion will fit the commencement of the subject. This will often require considerable calculation as well as much patience. Though seldom employed in actual composition, the construction of an infinite canon of this kind will be valuable practice for the student. We give a short specimen of this variety—

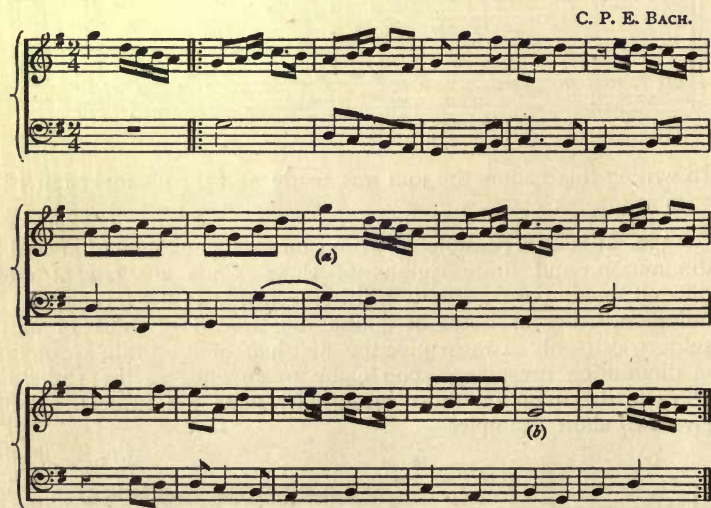
In writing this canon the join was made at (a); its inversion is seen at (b).

350. It is also possible to write canons by augmentation and diminution, and finite canons of these kinds are not at all difficult to compose. But it will be seen that in the former, the imitation, being in notes of double the length of those of the subject, can only at most give the first half of it; while a canon in diminution must very soon come to an end, as the shorter notes in the imitation must speedily overtake the subject. We give two short examples—



The method to be followed in writing such canons as these is the same as that described in § 336, except that the alternate sections written in the two parts are not of the same length. The asterisks in the above examples show where the canon ends.

351. The composition of an *infinite* canon by augmentation or diminution is, on the other hand, so extremely difficult as not to be worth the labour it requires. The special difficulty arises from the fact that the part which is moving in shorter notes has to be repeated against the latter half of the part which is moving in longer notes, that is to say, against both the first and second half of itself taken by augmentation. Those who have plenty of time to spare, and wish to amuse themselves with problems of this kind, will find full instructions as to how to proceed in the large works of Marpurg and Lobe; the aim of the present volume being purely practical, and designed to teach the student what is likely to be useful to him, we shall content ourselves here with giving a very neat specimen of a canon of this kind—

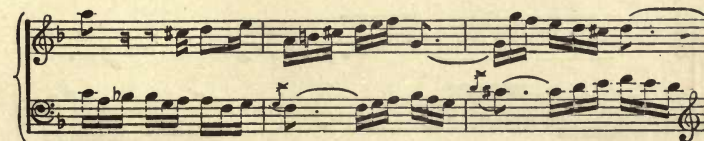
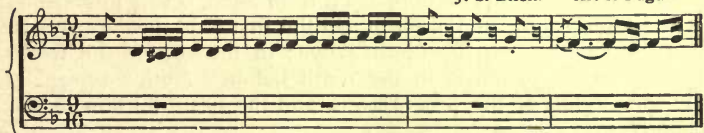


It will be seen that at (a) the subject in the upper part recommences, as an accompaniment to the augmentation of its own

latter half. The alteration of the last bar of the subject at (*b*) is evidently necessary here to avoid consecutive octaves; but this does not detract from the merit of the canon, which Marpurg (from whose work it is taken) describes as a "real masterpiece."

352. Some further varieties of two-part canon will be noticed in the last chapter of this volume, on "Curiosities of Canon"; we shall conclude the present chapter with some illustrations from the great masters showing the use of two-part canon in actual composition. We have already, in treating of Double Counterpoint in the Tenth, given an example of a canon at that interval from Bach's "Art of Fugue" (§ 166); we now give the commencement of an infinite canon in the octave from the same work; the piece is too long to quote in its entirety—

J. S. BACH. "Art of Fugue.



This page contains seven systems of musical notation for a two-part canon. Each system consists of two staves, a treble staff and a bass staff, joined by a brace on the left. The notation is in a single key signature (one sharp, F#) and 2/4 time. The first system shows both parts with complex, overlapping sixteenth-note patterns. The second system features a more active treble part with eighth-note runs and a bass part with a mix of eighth and sixteenth notes. The third system continues the intricate weaving of the two parts. The fourth system shows a treble part with a melodic line and a bass part with a more rhythmic, eighth-note accompaniment. The fifth system has a treble part with a melodic line and a bass part with a more rhythmic, eighth-note accompaniment. The sixth system shows a treble part with a melodic line and a bass part with a more rhythmic, eighth-note accompaniment. The seventh system concludes the canon with a final melodic phrase in the treble and a corresponding bass line.

354. A two-part canon in the unison is rather rare, though those in the octave are common enough. The following example of an infinite canon in the unison, by Mozart, is curious—

MOZART.

It will be seen that in the first eight bars of this canon the imitation is *per arsin et thesin*; at (a) a minim rest in the second voice replaces a semibreve rest in the first, thus causing the accents in the two parts to correspond for the next three bars; at (b) an extra minim's rest is added in the second voice, to lead back to the repetition at the original distance—three minims after the leading part.

355. In the canon just given the distinctness of the two voices is chiefly preserved by the reversal of the accents. In the following, clearness is obtained by contrast of tone colour—the subject announced by the piano being answered at a bar's distance by the strings.

SCHUBERT. Trio in E flat, Op. 100.

VIOLINO.

VIOLONCELLO.

PIANOFORTE.

The musical score is written for three instruments: Violino, Violoncello, and Pianoforte. It is in E-flat major (three flats) and 3/4 time. The first system shows the beginning of the canon, with a piano (p) dynamic marking. The second system continues the canon and includes a repeat sign and a 'c.c.' (coda) marking.

The continuation of this beautiful movement contains other canons in the unison and octave, sometimes at one bar's, and sometimes at two bars' distance, and deserves to be carefully studied.

356. Our next example, from one of Haydn's quartetts, is somewhat similar in character, though presenting points of difference—

HAYDN. Quartett, Op. 76. No. 2.

The musical score is written for a quartet, but only the first two parts (Violino and Violoncello) are shown. It is in D major (two sharps) and 3/4 time. The first system shows the beginning of the canon, with a forte (f) dynamic marking. The second system continues the canon.

Here we have a two-part canon in the octave, at one bar's distance, and each part doubled in the octave, as in the extract from Schubert given in the last paragraph. But the general effect is quite different, owing to the increased distance between the outside parts. Notice at (*a*) the modification of the lower part, arising from the compass of the instruments. The lower A (the third below C sharp) would have been impracticable for the viola and violoncello.

357. The first movement of one of Mozart's sonatas (that in D, $\frac{6}{8}$ time) furnishes some excellent examples of canons in the octave—

MOZART. Sonata in D.

The musical score displays five systems of two-part canons in the octave. Each system is written for a treble and bass staff. The first system, labeled (a), shows a canon where the lower part is modified for instrument compass. The subsequent systems show various other canon passages. The notation includes notes, rests, and bar lines, with some parts enclosed in brackets to indicate the canon structure.

In all these passages the canon commences with the same theme (the first subject of the movement), though each time

with a different continuation. At (*a*) the canon is in the octave below, at one bar's distance; at (*b*) in the octave above, at half a bar's distance; and at (*c*) in the octave below at one quaver's distance.

358. The following example, from Dussek's sonata known as "L'Invocation," is no less remarkable for its musical beauty than for its neat workmanship—

DUSSEK. "L'Invocation.

The musical score for "L'Invocation" by Dussek is presented in six systems, each consisting of a treble and bass staff. The key signature is G major (one sharp), and the time signature is 3/4. The notation includes various musical symbols such as notes, rests, and dynamic markings. The first system begins with a treble staff starting on G4 and a bass staff starting on G3. The second system continues the melody in the treble staff and introduces a new line in the bass staff. The third system features a treble staff with a melodic line and a bass staff with a supporting line. The fourth system shows a treble staff with a melodic line and a bass staff with a supporting line. The fifth system continues the melody in the treble staff and introduces a new line in the bass staff. The sixth system features a treble staff with a melodic line and a bass staff with a supporting line. The score is marked with various musical notations, including notes, rests, and dynamic markings like 'f' and 'p'.

The musical score consists of three systems of two staves each. The key signature is two flats (B-flat and E-flat), and the time signature is common time (C). The first system includes a measure marked with a circled 'b'. The notation is in double counterpoint in the octave.

The first part of this canon is in two parts only, at the seventh below. It is written in double counterpoint in the octave, for a reason which will immediately appear. At (a) a free middle part is added, to fill up the harmony; and at (b) the opening phrase is inverted in the fifteenth, the canon in the seventh below thus becoming one in the ninth above.

359. Our last example is a canon by inversion, strict as to intervals—

CLEMENTI. Gradus ad Parnassum.

The musical score for Clementi's 'Gradus ad Parnassum' consists of three systems of two staves each. The key signature is two sharps (F# and C#), and the time signature is 2/4. The notation includes repeat signs and various musical notations typical of the 'Gradus' exercises.

The musical score is a two-part canon in G major (one sharp) and 3/4 time. It consists of seven systems, each with a treble and bass staff. The first system begins with a treble staff containing a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, and a bass staff with a similar rhythmic pattern. The subsequent systems continue the melodic and harmonic development, with various note values and rests. The piece concludes with a final cadence in the seventh system.



The inversion is made according to the scheme given in § 280. The piece is very clever, but unmistakably dry, and it is given here for the sake of completeness. Whether its effect is worth the trouble involved in writing it, is at least an open question. It is extremely doubtful whether any one hearing it without any previous acquaintance would have the least idea that it was a strict canon by contrary motion!

360. The student should now try to invent canons at all intervals, after the model of those given in this chapter.

CHAPTER XIII.

CANONS WITH FREE PARTS. ACCOMPANIED CANONS.

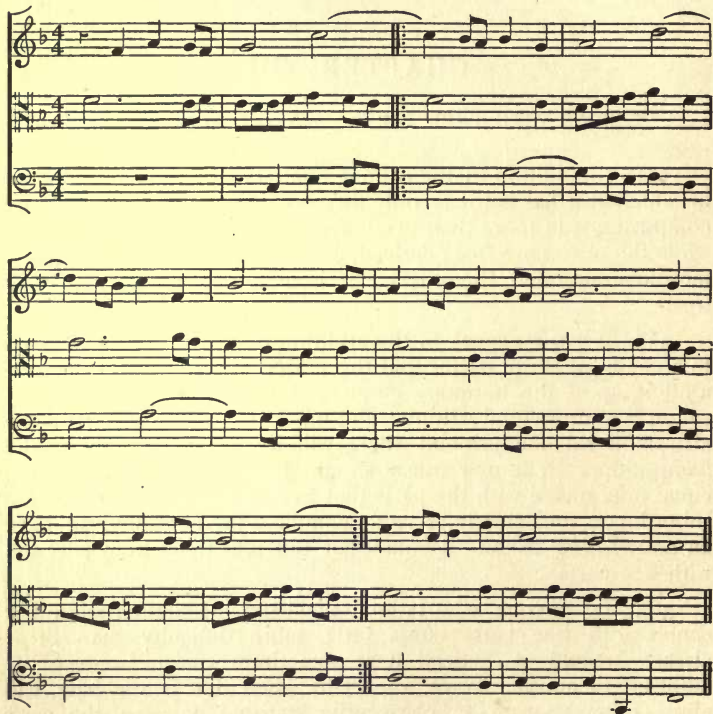
361. In addition to the canons treated of in the last chapter, in which the harmony is only in two parts, we frequently find compositions in more than two parts, of which two are in canon, while the others are free ; indeed, canons of this kind are probably more common than the others. It is of these that we shall now treat.

362. When we speak of the addition of a "free" part or parts to a canon, it is not meant that the added parts are to be merely a filling up of the harmony by plain chords ; the very essence of canon is contrapuntal writing ; and unless the additional parts be also in florid counterpoint there will be little unity about the composition. The new voices should be of nearly, if not quite, equal importance with the parts that are in canon ; when they are subordinate, and merely serve to complete the harmony, we have an *accompanied* canon—a somewhat different thing from a canon with free parts.

363. To anyone who is well practised in counterpoint, the canon with free parts offers little more difficulty than those already treated of—indeed it is sometimes easier, because the addition of another voice, especially when this is the bass, will allow progressions (*e.g.*, consecutive fourths) between the parts that are in canon which could not otherwise be introduced.

364. As with the added free parts to a double counterpoint dealt with in Chapter VII., those which are added to a canon may be in any position ; that is to say, the canon may be in the outer voices, in an outer and a middle, or in two middle voices. The forms most frequently met with are those in which the canon is either in the two upper, or in the two outer parts. It is impossible to give any precise rules for writing the free parts ; the method of doing this is best taught by examples, which we shall proceed to give, adding such notes upon them as may be likely to assist the student.

365. If the parts which are in canon be the two outer parts of the harmony, it is generally possible to add one or two free parts in the middle after the first sketch is completed ; but if the canon be in any other two voices, it will be necessary to write (or at least to think of) the added parts at the same time with the canon itself. To illustrate this, we will take the little infinite canon at the fourth below, given in § 347, and add a free middle part to it—

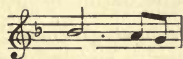


Though the new counterpoint here flows fairly well, it perhaps scarcely moves as freely as it might have done had it been originally written at the same time with the canon.

366. If now we were to take the two parts of the canon, transpose the bass an octave higher as an alto part, and endeavour to write a new bass underneath, the music would most likely sound stiff and forced. It will be remembered that it is generally more difficult to add a new bass than a new upper or middle part (§ 195). It would therefore be better to write a new canon at the same intervals, and on the same general harmonic outline as the last.

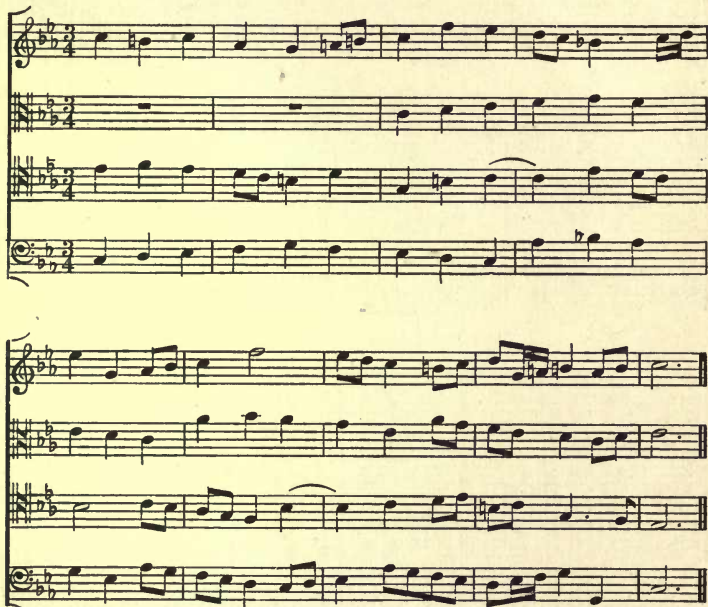
The image displays three systems of musical notation, each consisting of three staves (Treble, Alto, and Bass). The first system shows the initial entry of the canon. The second system includes annotations (a) and (b) pointing to specific musical features. The third system continues the musical development.

Crossing of the parts such as is seen at (a), is very common in canonic writing, and quite unobjectionable. Here it was necessary in order to keep the upper part in a comfortable position. At (b) will be noticed what appear like consecutive sevenths. The first note, A, however, is here a passing note, and the rule is not actually broken. It is better in general to avoid even such sevenths as these, though Bach continually uses them; they are introduced here because the quaver figure as it stands gives, when it appears in the alto of the next bar, a neater counterpoint than it would have done had the bar in the treble been written



as the student will easily see for himself. It may be said in general, that in these higher branches of composition greater freedom of treatment as regards minor points is allowed than in the more elementary stages of his work. A student who has been thoroughly grounded in counterpoint will be in little danger of letting his liberty degenerate into license.

367. We will now give a canon with two free parts, and choose a rather more difficult combination than the last, making the canon in the octave between alto and bass, and adding free counterpoint for treble and tenor. As our last canon was infinite, this shall be finite—



If the second and third bars of the alto part are compared with the corresponding passage of the bass, it will be seen that, while the notes are the same (except, of course, as to their octave), their harmonic significance is entirely changed. In the bass the notes form parts of chords in C minor, and in the alto they are no less distinctly in E flat. This is a frequent device in writing canon; its employment often helps to prevent the monotony which would be likely to occur, especially with canon in the octave, from too great prevalence of the same harmonic progressions.

368. The examples we have given will, it is hoped, sufficiently show the student how to write similar ones for himself. We now add a series of illustrations selected from the works of the great masters; because far more can be learned from the study and analysis of good models than in any other way.

369. A most interesting work, from the canons which it contains, is Bach's "Thirty Variations for the Clavier." Among these are to be found canons in every interval from the unison up to

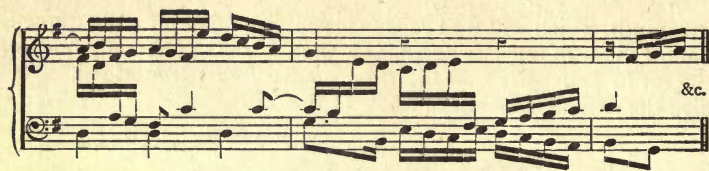
the ninth, which will well repay careful examination. We quoted one of these in our last chapter (§ 353), it being the only one of the set in two parts; all the others have free parts added. We give the commencement of a few of them.

J. S. BACH. "Thirty Variations."

It will be seen that this canon is in the third below. In consequence of the closeness of the interval of imitation, we find the parts crossing here at the fourth and fifth bars, in the same way in which we have seen them cross at (*a*) in our example to § 366.

370. We next give the first eight bars of a canon in the fourth below in contrary motion—

J. S. BACH. "Thirty Variations."

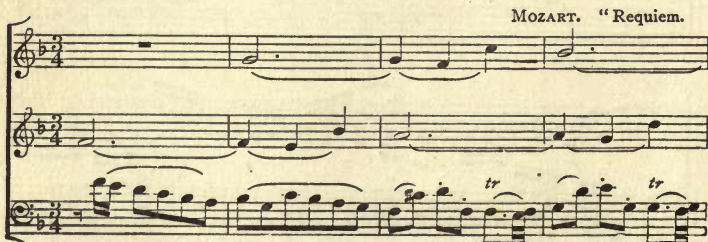


This example requires no annotations ; but it may be as well for the student to compare it with the canon in contrary motion by Clementi, given in § 359, and to observe how laboured and dry Clementi's workmanship is, as compared with Bach's. Merely technical skill will never produce really artistic results in the solution of such elaborate musical problems as those we are now considering.

371. Our last example from this work is the commencement of a canon in the sixth above, which needs no explanation—



372. Next to Sebastian Bach, no one has shown greater mastery of scientific resources than Mozart. We give two charming specimens by him of canons with free parts. The first is well known—the opening symphony of the "Recordare" in the "Requiem"—



The first system consists of three staves. The top staff has a treble clef and a key signature of one flat. It contains a melody with eighth and sixteenth notes. The middle staff has a treble clef and the same key signature, containing a similar melody. The bottom staff has a bass clef and the same key signature, containing a bass line with trills marked 'tr'. A first ending bracket labeled '(a)' spans the final two measures of the system.

The second system also consists of three staves with the same clefs and key signature. The top staff continues the melody. The middle staff continues the melody. The bottom staff continues the bass line with trills marked 'tr'. A second ending bracket labeled '(b)' spans the final two measures of the system.

The first six bars of this passage show a canon in the second above, at one bar's distance. At (a) begins a canon in the unison at one crotchet's distance, on a pedal bass, and with a free middle part; at (b) the canon is in the octave, instead of the unison.

373. Our next example by Mozart is as little known as the extract from the "Requiem" is generally familiar. It is a remarkably neat and beautiful canon in the fifth above, by contrary motion, and, as it is only short, no apology is required for quoting it in its entirety—

Adagio. MOZART. Canonic Adagio for 2 Corni di Bassetto and Fagotto.

The score is in three systems of three staves each. The key signature is one flat and the time signature is common time (C). The first system shows the beginning of the canon. The second system continues the canon. The third system concludes the canon. Dynamics include *p* (piano), *cres.* (crescendo), and *f* (forte).



374. It is impossible to draw any hard and fast line of distinction between canons with free parts and such canons as are merely accompanied. All the examples hitherto given unquestionably belong to the former class ; in our next illustration we have more of the character of an accompanied canon—

MOZART. Serenade in C minor.

Here the canon is in the octave between the outer parts, and although the middle parts are to a certain extent contrapuntal, they have none of the individuality of character which can be seen in the free parts of the examples previously given. To save space, we have arranged the passage on two staves, taking no notice of the crossing of the parts : it must not be supposed that the consecutive octaves in the fifth and seventh bars are to be found in Mozart's score.

375. The following passage is a good example of an accompanied canon—

MENDELSSOHN. 95th Psalm.

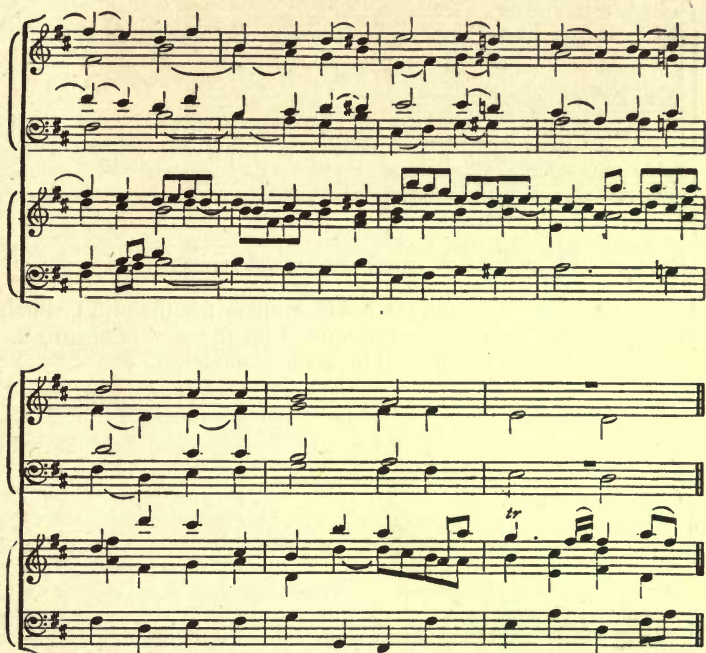
The musical score for Mendelssohn's 95th Psalm is presented in three systems. Each system consists of a vocal line (treble clef) and two instrumental lines (treble and bass clefs). The key signature has two flats (B-flat and E-flat), and the time signature is 4/4. The vocal line is labeled 'CHORUS.' and the instrumental lines are labeled 'ORCHESTRA.' The first system shows the vocal line entering with a half note, followed by the orchestra. The second system continues the vocal line with a half note, and the orchestra provides harmonic support. The third system shows the vocal line with a half note, and the orchestra continues with a half note. The score ends with a double bar line and the initials '&c.' in the vocal line.

Here the instrumental parts are strictly subordinate to the vocal, and do nothing more than fill up the harmonies.

376. Our next illustration shows an accompanied canon of a different kind—

HAYDN. 3rd Mass.

The musical score for Haydn's 3rd Mass is presented in two systems. Each system consists of a vocal line (treble clef) and two instrumental lines (treble and bass clefs). The key signature has two sharps (F-sharp and C-sharp), and the time signature is 4/4. The vocal line is labeled 'CHORUS.' and the instrumental lines are labeled 'ORCHESTRA.' The first system shows the vocal line entering with a half note, followed by the orchestra. The second system continues the vocal line with a half note, and the orchestra provides harmonic support. The score ends with a double bar line.



Here the voices have a canon in the fifth below, both parts being doubled in the octave ; the orchestra not only fills up the middle parts of the harmony, but gives a florid embellishment of the canon itself. This form of accompaniment is maintained to the end of the movement, which is in canon throughout ; and in the latter half the instrumental parts become more independent, as in the following passage—

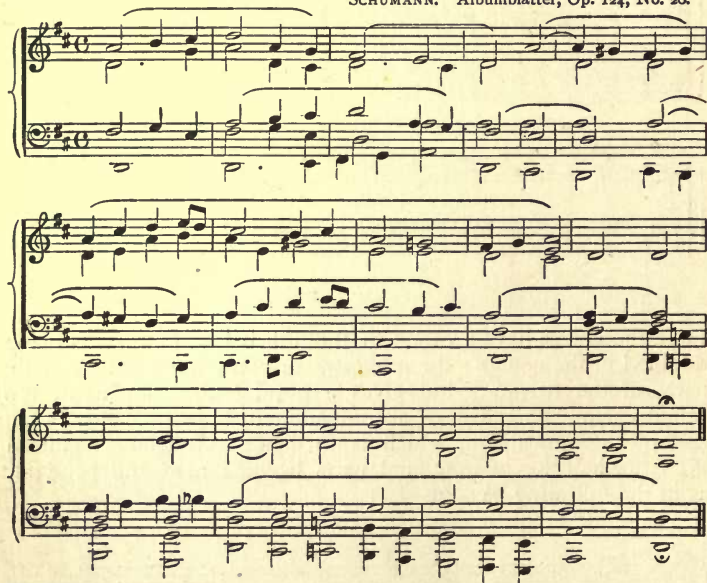




In both the above examples holding notes for the wind, which merely fill up the harmony, are omitted for the sake of clearness.

377. Our last example will be a more modern one—

SCHUMANN. *Albumblätter*, Op. 124, No. 20.



Here the canon is in the octave at one bar's distance between the upper part, and what we should call the first tenor were the piece for voices instead of piano. In consequence of the crossing of the middle parts, it will require a little attention to follow the canon in some places; it is carried on to the last note. It will be seen that the harmony is in some places very free.

378. The student should now practise writing canons in different intervals, and with free parts, putting the canon into the different voices in turn. He will find this more interesting, and little, if at all, more difficult than writing canons without accompaniment.

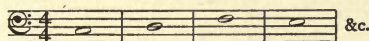
CHAPTER XIV.

THE CANON ON A CANTO FERMO, OR CHORAL.

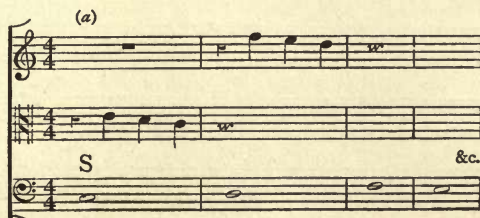
379. The last kind of two-part canon which it will be advisable to study is that in which two voices which shall be in canon are to be added to a given subject—either a simple *canto fermo*, or a choral. This is in reality a variety of florid counterpoint; but it is far more difficult than any that the student has yet attempted. He is, however, strongly recommended to devote some time to it, because it will materially lighten his labours when he comes later to deal with more elaborate canons.

380. The special difficulty of this species of composition arises from the fact that every note of the leading voice of the canon has, as soon as the imitation has begun, to be regarded from a threefold point of view. It must form a good counterpoint both to the *canto fermo* and to the phrase in the imitating voice which it accompanies; in this there is no very great difficulty; but it must also be so written that when transposed into the imitating voice it will form a good accompaniment to the following note of the *canto fermo*. It will often happen that either the interval or the distance of time of the reply will be such that it will be quite impossible to continue the canon; in that case, a fresh attempt must be made at some other interval, or some other distance, until success rewards our efforts.

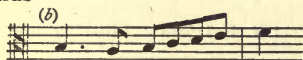
381. A short example will best illustrate what has just been said. Let us take as a subject the familiar theme—



put it in the bass, and try to write above it a canon in the ninth at one bar's distance. Supposing we begin with a very simple figure—



The first note in the second bar of the alto must be one which will not only go with the D of the subject, but which, when transposed a ninth higher in the treble will harmonize with the F in the third bar. A little thought will show us that B is the only note fulfilling both these conditions; this will become C in the treble. So far so good; but now comes the knotty point. How can we complete the second bar in the alto in a way which will suit, when it is transposed, for the third bar of the treble? We cannot write thus—



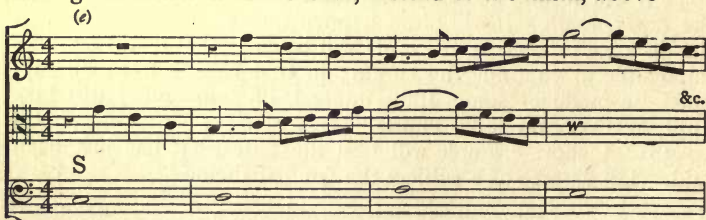
because of the consecutive octaves with the bass; neither can we take this—



for this will give us a most unpleasant mediant chord in root position in the fourth bar. If we try—

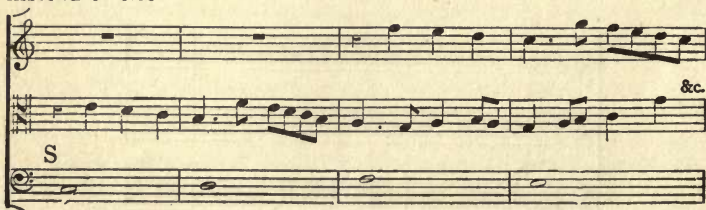


which at first sight looks more promising, we find that when transposed it gives us consecutive fifths with the *canto fermo*. In fact, we are in "a tight place," and there is no really satisfactory continuation. We therefore try again, altering the first bar, and making the canon in the seventh, instead of the ninth, above—



The canon now goes smoothly enough.

382. It would also have been possible here to continue in the original interval by introducing the imitation at two bars' distance, instead of one—



383. The student will form a fair idea from the above examples of the kind of difficulty which he will meet with. In writing exercises of this kind, he should first try to work mentally the outline of a canon upon a *canto fermo*, when he has decided on the interval and distance of reply. He need not do this for the whole of the subject; but only for enough of it to make sure that he has a promising commencement; though even then he will not seldom come across a progression in the middle that stops further progress. He may find it useful in his earlier attempts to avail himself at starting of some of the models for imitation given on pages 8, 9, of the *Additional Exercises to Counterpoint*. He must also be prepared for many disappointments; at first, indeed, he will probably have at least two or three failures to every success.

384. We will now give some examples of canons in various intervals, using the same two subjects as *canti fermi* that we have so often treated for counterpoint. We first take our major subject in the bass, and write above it a canon in the seventh below—

The musical notation consists of two systems. The first system shows a treble staff with a canon in the seventh below and a bass staff with the subject 'S'. The second system shows the same canon in the seventh below and a bass staff with the subject '(a)'. The notation is in 4/4 time and G major.

It is only needful to remark of this, as of the other examples we shall give, that they are written in *free*, not in strict counterpoint. Thus at (a) we have two chords in the bar, the second (at the fourth beat) being the third inversion of the dominant seventh. The seventh is not really doubled, as the F in the alto is only a passing note. It must further be said that in all the examples we shall find a certain amount of stiffness. Under such limitations it is almost impossible to make the parts move freely. Correctness must be the first thing aimed at; but in general it would require a genius little less than Sebastian Bach's to make such exercises very interesting musically. The student must be content if he can make them fairly melodious.

385. We now take the subject in the treble, writing below it a canon in the fifth, again at one bar's distance—

The musical score for Example 385 consists of two systems of three staves each. The first system is marked with a treble clef and a key signature of one sharp (F#). The subject is written in the treble staff, starting with a whole note G4. The canon is written in the alto and tenor staves, starting at the second bar. The second system continues the subject and canon, with the subject ending with a double bar line and repeat dots.

There is no special objection here to the consecutive octaves by contrary motion between the treble and alto in the first and second bars, for two reasons. In the first place, they are between tonic and dominant, and are, therefore, allowed occasionally in the free style; and besides this, as we are not restricted to one chord in a bar, we are fairly justified in assuming that the E at the end of the first bar represents a submediant chord. The harmony at the entry of the tenor is, of course, the third inversion of the dominant seventh. The close of the canon is free; this is always allowed where necessary.

386. For our last example in a major key we put the subject in the middle, and write a canon in the octave above, at two bars' distance—

The musical score for Example 386 consists of two systems of three staves each. The first system is marked with a treble clef and a key signature of one sharp (F#). The subject is written in the middle staff, starting with a whole note G4. The canon is written in the treble and tenor staves, starting at the third bar. The second system continues the subject and canon, with the subject ending with a double bar line and repeat dots.

This requires no explanation; it will be seen that the canon is here continued to the last note.

387. We next take our minor subject, placing it in the bass, with a canon for treble and alto in the fourth above—

The musical score for exercise 387 is written in 4/4 time. It consists of three staves. The top staff is in treble clef, the middle staff is in alto clef (C-clef on the third line), and the bottom staff is in bass clef. The bass part is labeled 'S' for subject. The treble and alto parts form a canon in the fourth. A specific note in the alto part is marked with '(a)'.

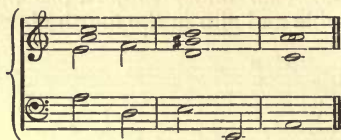
Here again the canon is continued to the end. Notice at (a) how the consecutive fifths between the first notes of the treble and bass of the fourth and fifth bars are saved by the clear indication of a new chord at the half bar.

388. Our next canon shall be in the octave, at only half a bar's distance—

The musical score for exercise 388 is written in 4/4 time. It consists of three staves. The top staff is in treble clef, the middle staff is in alto clef, and the bottom staff is in bass clef. The bass part is labeled 'S' for subject. The treble and alto parts form a canon in the octave, with an entry distance of half a bar.

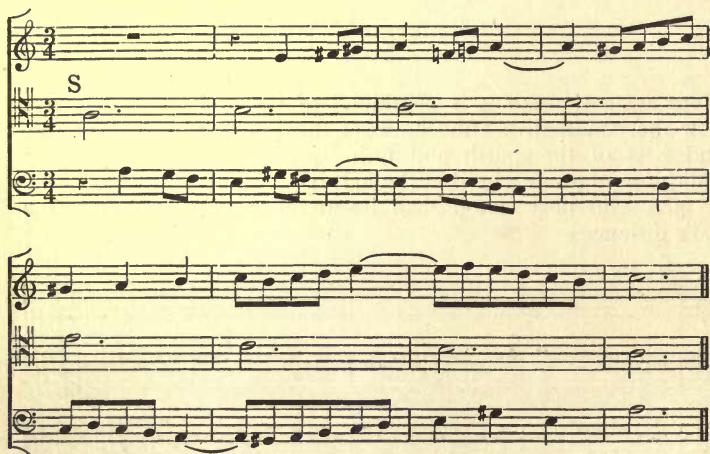
In order to preserve the canon, it has been needful here to make

the harmony in the sixth and seventh bars somewhat free. The harmonic framework of these bars is—



but without the addition of free parts it is impossible to make it complete.

389. To write a canon by inverse movement upon a *canto fermo* is even more difficult than to write one in direct movement, and the result will in most cases not be worth the trouble involved—that is to say, from a *musical* point of view. Such is, at any rate, our own opinion of the following specimen, which has been produced with some little labour, merely to show the possibility of a canon of this kind—



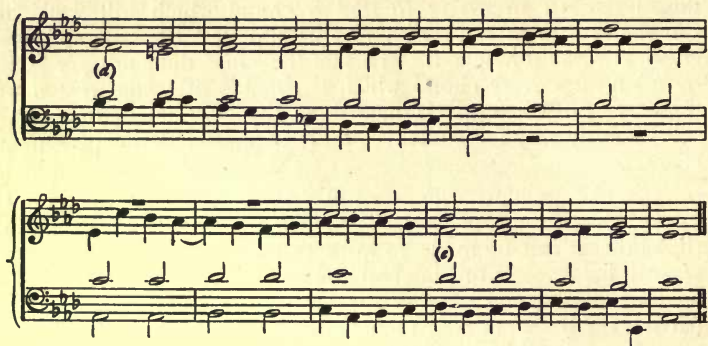
390. After working several canons on a *canto fermo*, the student will find what we have described as “making the join” in an infinite canon (§ 341), considerably easier; for here he has, so to speak, to make a join in every bar. The work is also very interesting for its own sake; and the fluency in part writing acquired by its practice will well repay the learner for the hard work that it demands.

391. There are two methods of writing a canon upon a choral. The simpler, and easier, is to treat the choral itself as the subject of the canon, and to add one or more free parts to it. To do

this, it is first necessary to find a choral which will work in canon—that is to say, which can be imitated by itself at some given interval throughout. This is the chief difficulty, for it is by no means every choral which is capable of being treated in this way; but when this is once done, the addition of free parts will be fairly easy for students who have mastered the preceding chapter.

392. As an illustration, we will write a canon on the choral, “Jesu, der du meine Seele.” An examination of the melody shows that it can be made to work throughout as a canon in the seventh below. At this interval the canonic voices will evidently be too near to one another for both to be treated as outside parts. We therefore take them as treble and tenor, adding free parts for alto and bass—

The musical score is written for four voices: Treble, Alto, Tenor, and Bass. It is in the key of B-flat major (two flats) and 4/4 time. The score consists of five systems of staves. The Treble and Tenor parts are in canon, with the Tenor part entering one measure later than the Treble part. The Alto and Bass parts are free parts. The score includes various musical notations such as notes, rests, and accidentals. There are also some annotations in parentheses: (a) and (b) in the second system, and (c) in the fifth system.



393. This example has several points calling for remark. Note first that, in order to give unity of character to the music, the moving figure of crotchets is maintained persistently, either in the alto or the bass, till the last bar. The canon in the tenor commences at two bars' distance; but, though it is desirable to retain the same distance of *interval* throughout a canon of this kind, there is no objection to altering the distance of *time*; indeed, this is sometimes absolutely necessary (as we shall see directly with this very choral), if we are to continue the canon at all. At (a) the D in the tenor is made natural for harmonic reasons; as a canon in the seventh is never strict as to interval, such chromatic alteration as this can always be made where found expedient.

394. At (b) the first eight bars of the melody are repeated; to avoid monotony, it is desirable, where practicable, to change the harmony. As the canon in the tenor has to be retained, we are, of course, somewhat limited in our choice of chords; but it will be seen that, notwithstanding this, considerable variety is possible.

395. The entry of the tenor at (c) should be particularly noticed. If the student will try, he will find that there is no other point of entry at which the canon in the seventh can be continued. Here we have three consecutive fourths with the treble. It will now be seen why we gave the imitation to the tenor and not to the bass. Had the canon here been in the outer parts, or in the alto and bass, it could have been carried no further; but the addition of the other voices here makes the harmony quite correct (§ 363).

396. In the next line of the choral it is necessary to vary the distance of time of the imitation. Had we not inserted a bar's rest in the tenor before (d), it is evident that we should have had consecutive fifths with the treble. Here the canon is at three

bars' distance. At (e), by omitting in the tenor the two bars' rest of the treble, we reduce the distance of time between the two parts to one bar.

397. It is hoped that these explanations will sufficiently show how a canon of this kind is to be written. We now give a few short examples from the organ works of Bach. The first is the commencement of a canon in the octave*—

J. S. BACH. Organ Prelude on "Gottes Sohn ist Kommen.

At (a) it will be seen that the imitation of the preceding bar of the pattern is not exact. In consequence of the difficulty of writing such canons as these, slight modifications of detail are allowed, provided they do not obscure the imitation.

* In the original, the lower voice of the canon, which we have here printed on the middle staff, is given to the Pedal, and marked "*Trompete, 8 ft.*" As it is the middle part of the harmony, we have altered the relative position of the two bass lines in order to make it easier for the student to read.

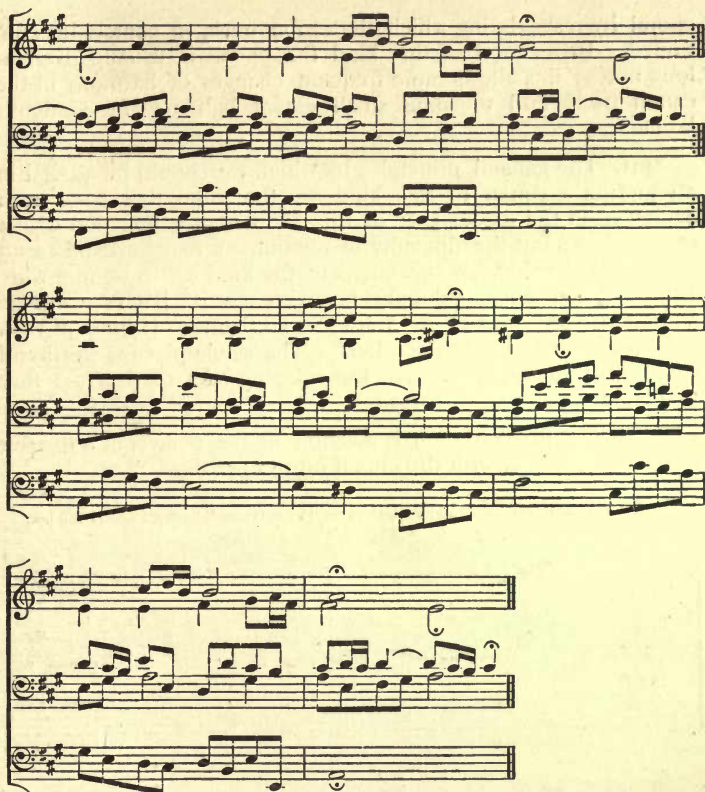
398. In the example just given the canon is between treble and tenor. In the next it will be between the outside voices—

J. S. BACH. Organ Prelude on "Erschienen ist der herrliche Tag."

The \frown marked here indicates, not a pause on the notes as usual, but simply the end of a line of the melody. This example is quoted to show how much freedom Bach occasionally allows himself in the treatment of a canon of this kind. Let the student compare the melody of the upper part from (a) with that of the bass from (b).

399. Our last example of this species of canon is in the fourth below, and in five parts—

J. S. BACH. Organ Prelude on "Liebster Jesu, wir sind hier."



This little piece is written for two manuals and pedal, the right hand part being marked *forte*, to bring out the canon distinctly, and the left hand *piano*, containing merely the accompanying counterpoints. The form of the melody is here somewhat altered, to enable the composer to treat it in canon; the more usual form can be seen in the *Additional Exercises to Counterpoint*, page 12. Notice, also, the curious harmony of the cadences—free, even for Bach, but necessitated here by the restrictions under which he is working.

400. The second, and more difficult, way of writing a canon upon a choral is to treat the choral itself as a *canto fermo*, and to write upon it two parts in canon, with or without the addition of free parts. The material of the canon may be taken from the choral itself, but this is optional. It will generally be found convenient to commence the canon alone, and to let the choral enter later; it is usual, also to separate the different lines of the

choral by rests, during which the canon must, of course, be continued. In a canon of this kind the choral is usually given in long notes; this allows more frequent changes of harmony in the canon itself, and to some small extent lightens the student's labours.

401. The general principles by which we should be guided in attempting a canon of this kind are the same that have been explained in the earlier part of this chapter in connection with a *canto fermo*; but the difficulty of obtaining a really artistic result is so great that but few specimens of the kind are to be met with. Probably the finest example in existence is Bach's Canonic Variations for organ on Luther's Christmas Hymn, "Vom Himmel hoch da komm' ich her." The whole piece is worthy of careful examination; we give the opening bars of the first four variations.

402. The first variation is a canon in the octave, at a quarter of a bar's distance, with the choral on the pedals—

J. S. BACH. Canonic Variations on "Vom Himmel hoch da komm' ich her.

Here the subject of the canon is quite independent of the choral, each line of which enters, like the first, after a bar and a half's rest. The florid canon, which, though in the octave, is not entirely strict as to intervals, is kept up to the last note of the variation. It ought to be mentioned that the piece is written for two manuals; this will explain the frequent crossing of the parts to be met with in some of the extracts.

403. In the second variation, the choral is again in the pedals,

and the canon is now in the fifth below, at half a bar's distance, the opening theme being the commencement of the choral—

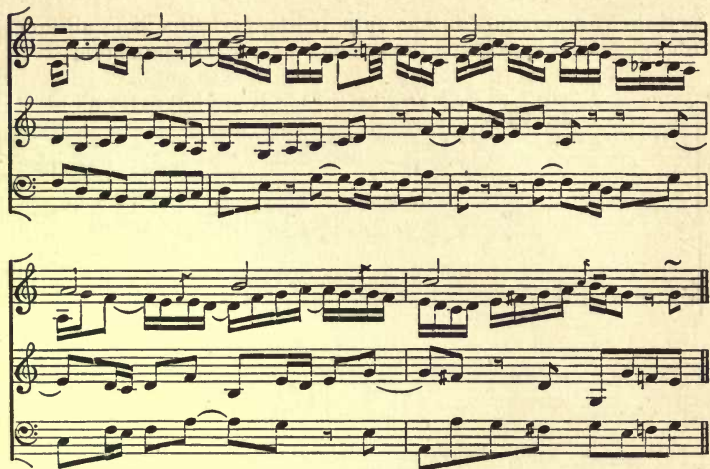
J. S. BACH. Canonic Variations on "Vom Himmel hoch da komm 'ich her.'"

The image displays three systems of musical notation for J. S. Bach's Canonic Variations. Each system consists of three staves: a treble staff, a second treble staff, and a bass staff. The first system shows the beginning of a variation with a treble staff starting on a G-clef and a bass staff on a C-clef. The second system continues the variation. The third system shows a variation with a treble staff starting on a G-clef and a bass staff on a C-clef. The notation includes various musical symbols such as notes, rests, and bar lines.

404. With all their ingenuity, the two variations of which we have quoted the first bars are simple, compared with those that follow, which show what is possible in the way of scientific device to a composer with the genius of Bach. The third variation begins thus—

J. S. BACH. Canonic Variations on "Vom Himmel hoch da komm 'ich her.'"

The image displays the beginning of a variation from J. S. Bach's Canonic Variations. It consists of three staves: a treble staff, a second treble staff, and a bass staff. The notation includes various musical symbols such as notes, rests, and bar lines.

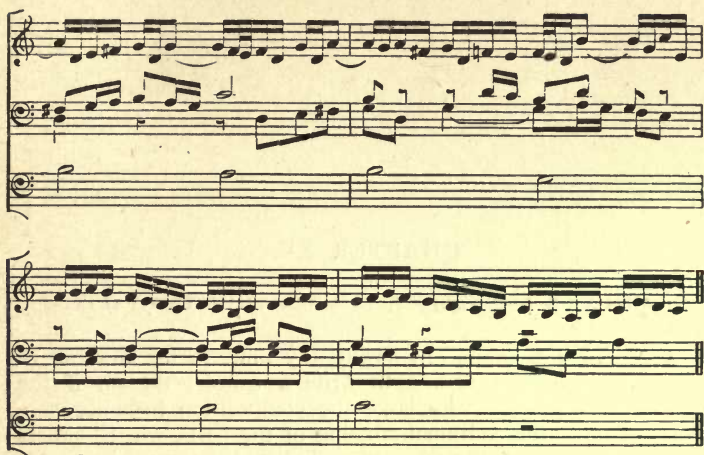


Here we have a canon in the seventh above at half a bar's distance, accompanied with a florid free part. It will be seen that the first four bars of the canon are made of sequential repetitions of the first phrase of the choral. This phrase is resumed in the last bar of our quotation, and continues to be a prominent feature in the whole variation. The choral, treated as a *canto fermo*, is here in the upper part.

405. The fourth variation is perhaps even more astonishing. It is a canon in the octave by augmentation, continued for forty two bars, with a free middle part, the choral being again on the pedals—

J. S. BACH. Canonic Variations on "Vom Himmel hoch da komm ich her."





406. The last variation, which we only refer to here, as it is not an illustration of the species of canon we are now treating, introduces the choral in canon by contrary motion in the sixth, third, second, and ninth, and winds up with a most marvellous *tour de force*, the four lines of the choral being simultaneously introduced as counterpoints to one another! Let the student carefully examine this wonderful piece, and then go and do likewise—if he can! In any case, the study and analysis of the scientific masterpieces of Bach cannot fail to be of the greatest benefit to him.

CHAPTER XV.

CANONS ON ONE SUBJECT, IN MORE THAN TWO PARTS.

407. There is practically hardly any limit to the number of parts in which it is *possible* to write a canon; though if the number of voices be very large the composition becomes confused, owing to the continual crossing of the parts, which renders it impossible to hear the separate melodies distinctly. In a later chapter (§ 474) we shall give an example of this kind. But canons for three, four, or five voices are by no means unusual, and it is of those that we have now to speak.

408. As with the canons in two parts, treated of in preceding chapters, those in more than two parts may be at any interval. But it is most usual to write canons in three and four parts, either in the unison and octave (as we have already seen with the Rounds in Chapter XI.), or, if they are for mixed voices, to combine canon in the octave with that in the fifth. Thus, if a canon were for four voices—treble, alto, tenor, and bass—the general arrangement would be that the canon in the alto would be in the fourth or fifth below the treble, that in the tenor would be at the octave below the treble, and that in the bass an octave below the alto. This, however, is by no means obligatory, and we shall give presently examples of canons at other intervals than these.

409. No fresh directions have to be given for writing canons in more than two parts. The method of procedure is the same as before. (See § 336.) Having decided on the number of parts, their interval, and distance of entry, we write the first part down to the point where the second voice enters. We then copy the subject, as far as we have written it, into the line of the second voice, adding a counterpoint for the first voice, and continue as with a two-part canon until the entry of the third voice. We then write the commencement of the subject in the third voice, adding to it the counterpoint in the second voice which was before in the first—of course transposing to the proper interval if the canon is not in the octave or unison. In this order we continue to the end, writing the parts which are already fixed first, and adding the new counterpoints later.

410. As an example of this system of working, we will take the commencement of Byrd's universally-known canon, "Non nobis, Domine," for three voices, and show how such a piece is to be composed. The number over each bar indicates the order in which it would most probably have been written down—

The canon here is led by the alto, answered a fourth below (in the dominant), by the tenor in the second bar, and an octave below by the bass in the fourth bar. We do not, of course, maintain that Byrd certainly wrote down the parts in the order which we have shown here; because a composer for the most part carries on his work to a considerable extent in his head before he commits anything to paper; but what we do point out by the figures we have given is the order in which the different voices must be added. Thus, after the first three bars were written for the alto and tenor (1 to 5), the next three bars were fixed, so far as the bass was concerned, therefore, 6, 7, and 8 would most likely be the next to be put down; 9 is also fixed, as the imitation of 5; 10 follows naturally as the accompaniment of 9; and this in its turn is transposed as 11. The student will easily follow this analysis to the end of the extract.

411. It will now be readily understood that the general principles which guide us in this kind of composition are in the main the same as those which we indicated in the last chapter, when treating of the writing of canons on a *canto fermo*. Every note added in the leading voice has to be considered, not only in its relation to all the parts which it is actually accompanying, but in its relation to those which when transposed into another voice it will have to accompany in some subsequent bar. It will also be seen how impossible it is to lay down any absolute rules for our guidance; because a rule which might apply perfectly well for a transposition at one interval, might be (and probably would be) quite useless at some different interval, or distance of time. The whole thing is a matter of practice, of calculation, and of facility in counterpoint; and it is in this respect that the working of canons on a *canto fermo* is so valuable as a preparatory step. The student will find a three or four-part canon little, if at all, more difficult than the exercises prescribed for him in the preceding chapter. All we can do now to assist him is to furnish

him with models of various styles for analysis and imitation. His own industry and perseverance must do the rest.

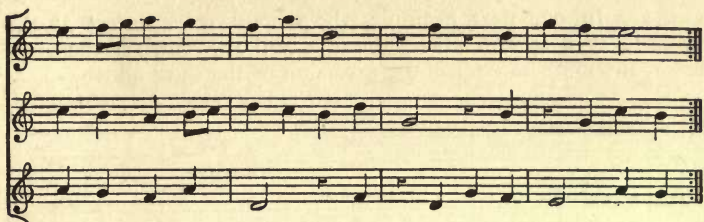
412. As a particularly neat specimen of an infinite three-part canon, we first give the whole of the "Non nobis," of which we have been examining the opening bars—

W. BYRD. "Non nobis, Domine."

The pause in the fourth bar indicates, as in some of our preceding examples, the place at which the music ends. As the canon is only in the octave and fourth, it is strict as to intervals (§ 277); at (a) the minor seventh of the scale is therefore introduced (§ 340), as otherwise, the imitation of the leading note by the tenor in the next bar would have induced a modulation into the key of the dominant.

413. Our next specimen is by Friedemann Bach—

W. FR. BACH.



Here the canon is in the fourth and octave above; in our last example we saw the fourth and octave below. Here, also, the imitation in the octave precedes that in the fourth, and the latter is not, as in Byrd's canon, strict as to interval.

414. The two following canons—both finite—are by Mozart—

MOZART.

In this example, in the unison and octave, it is only needful to call attention to the frequent crossing of the two upper parts (§ 337). Here the clearness of the imitation is preserved by the contrasted rhythm of the two parts which lie close together.

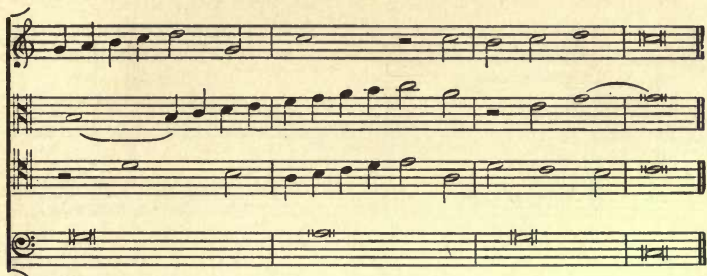
415. In our next example, the second voice enters at the distance of a second above the first, and the third at the sixth below the first—of course, the inversion of the third above—

MOZART.

In both this and the preceding canon the close is free.

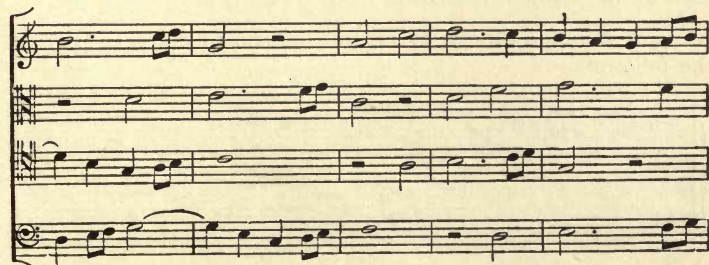
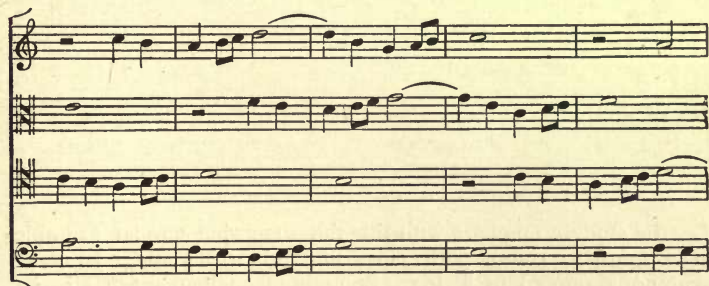
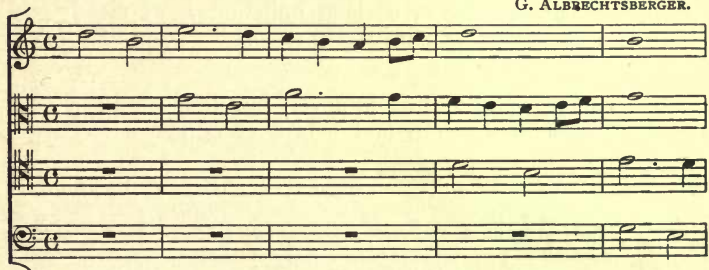
416. It is far from easy to write a canon in more than two parts upon a *canto fermo*; the following example, taken from Cherubini's work, will show that it is not impossible—

F. AZOPARDI.



417. It has been already said (§ 408) that in four-part canons it is very common to find the imitation at the fifth and octave. Such is the case in the first specimen of this kind to be given—

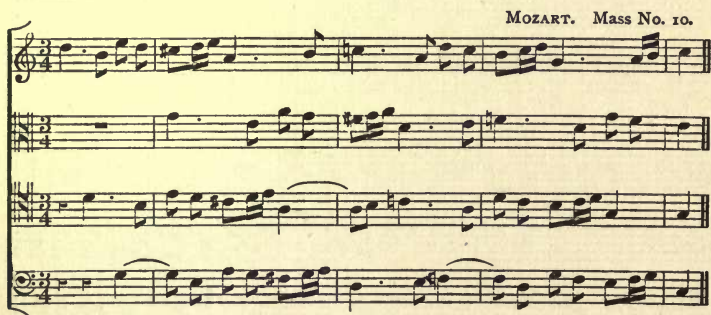
G. ALBRECHTSBERGER.





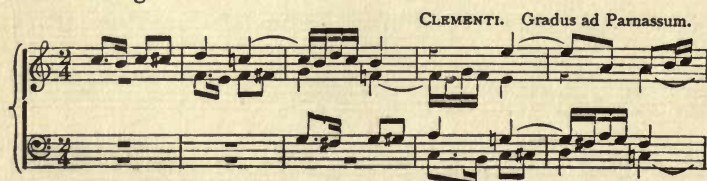
The occasional introduction of rests, as here in the sixth bar, is frequently advisable in canons, as it renders the next entry of the leading part, as also of its later imitation, more clearly perceptible to the hearer. In the above canon the close from (a) is free.

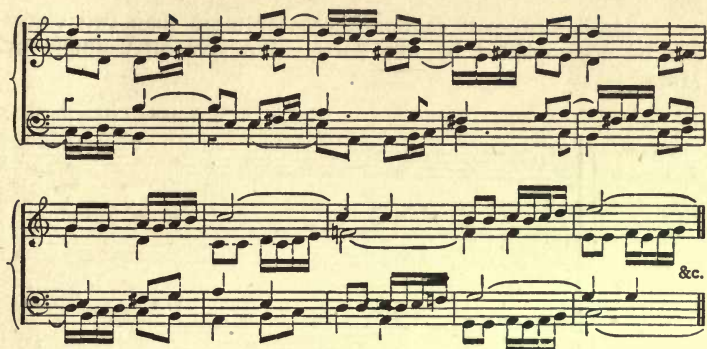
418. Our next illustration is a very beautiful specimen of a four-part canon in the fifth and octave at only one crotchet's distance—



Let the student compare with this the somewhat similar example of a four-part canon with close imitation from the "Jupiter" symphony, quoted in § 305. Something analogous will also be seen in the "Amen" chorus of Handel's "Messiah."

419. Another variety, as regards interval of entry, is seen in the following—

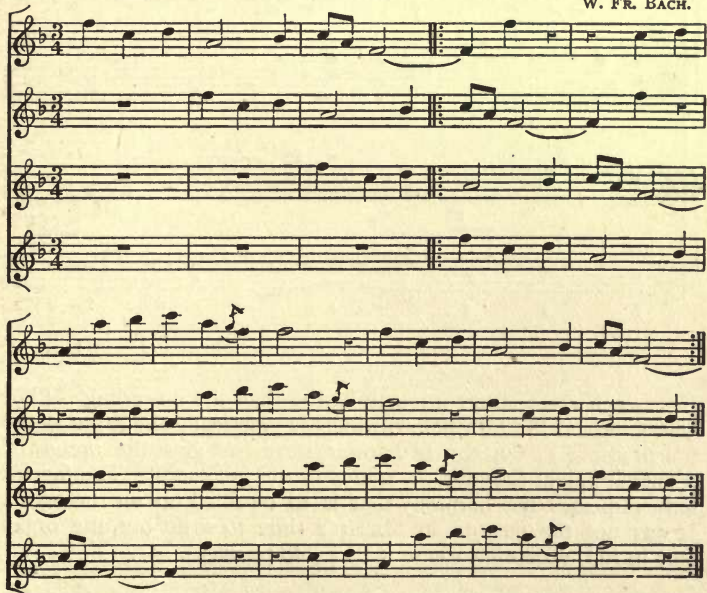




The canon, which extends to 64 bars, is too long to quote in its entirety. Though founded only on one subject, the piece has in form some resemblance to the double canons to be spoken of in the next chapter. The treble, which leads, is imitated by the alto in the fifth below; the tenor and bass stand in the same relation to one another, the tenor being a fourth below the treble, and the bass a fourth below the alto.

420. As all the four-part canons hitherto shown have been finite, we give next a short infinite canon in the unison—

W. FR. BACH.



This is so clear and simple as to require no explanation.

421. Like two-part canons, those for more than two voices can be accompanied by free parts. We give an example by Mozart—

MOZART. Mass No. 12.

SOPRANO.
ALTO.
TENOR.
BASS.

ORCHESTRA.

Viol. 1. *tr*
Viol. 2.
Bassi e Org. 7 6 4 #

The musical score is presented in two systems. The first system shows the vocal parts (Soprano, Alto, Tenor, Bass) and the orchestral parts (Violins 1 and 2, Basses and Organ). The second system continues the vocal and orchestral parts. The figured bass at the bottom of the second system indicates the harmony for the organ and basso continuo.

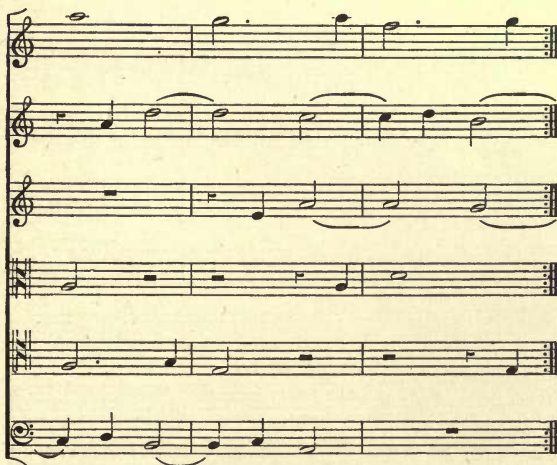
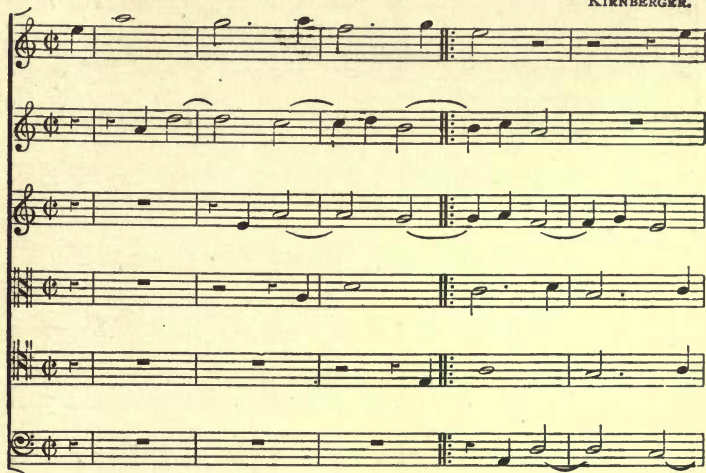
Figured bass notation: # 4 # 6 — 4 6 5 6 5 6 5 7 6 b 5

Here each voice enters a fourth higher than the preceding. (The bass enters at the fifth below, which is practically the same as the fourth above.) On the two lower staves we give the orchestral accompaniment exactly as it stands in the full score. The figured bass indicates the harmony that is to be filled up on the organ. It was not the custom in Mozart's time to write out the organ part in full, excepting where it had solo passages.

422. It was said in commencing this chapter that canons could be written in almost any number of parts. We now give

two specimens of canons for a larger number of voices. The first is by Kirnberger—

KIRNBERGER.



Here we have an infinite canon for six voices in the fifth and octave; the entries are alternately half a bar and a whole bar behind one another.

423. Our last example is more curious—

MARBURG.

The first system of the musical score consists of eight staves. The top staff is in treble clef with a key signature of one flat (B-flat) and a common time signature (C). The remaining seven staves are in bass clef. The music is a canon, with each staff entering at a different time. The first staff begins with a quarter rest, followed by a series of eighth and sixteenth notes. The other staves enter sequentially, creating a complex polyphonic texture. The system ends with a double bar line.

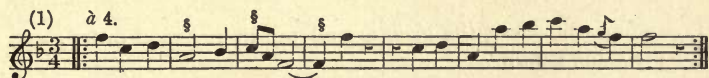
The second system of the musical score consists of eight staves, continuing the canon from the first system. The notation is similar, with the top staff in treble clef and the others in bass clef. The music continues with various rhythmic patterns, including eighth and sixteenth notes, and rests. The system ends with a double bar line.

This is an infinite canon for nine voices, the peculiarity of which is that each successive voice enters a third lower than the preceding. Such canons as these require an amount of ingenuity and patience to invent which can generally be much more profitably employed in other directions.

424. A canon is usually described according to the number of parts and the number of subjects which it contains. On the continent the general plan is to speak of a Canon "*à 2*," "*à 3*," "*à 4*," and so on; in this country a rather different nomenclature is adopted. A two-part canon, such as those given in Chapter XII., is described as a "Canon 2 in 1"—that is to say, having two voices and one subject; similarly, those we have been treating of in this chapter would be said to be canons "3 in 1," "4 in 1," and so on, according to the number of voices. If there be more than one subject, the first of the two figures shows the number of voices taking part in the canon, and the second shows the number of subjects. Thus a double canon, with four parts and two subjects, would be spoken of as a canon "4 in 2," and similarly in other cases. Canons of this kind will be spoken of in our next chapter.

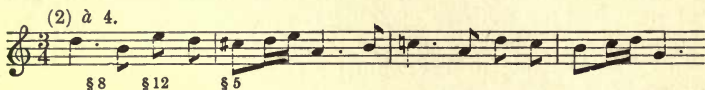
425. All the canons we have given in this chapter have been written out in full, either in score, with each part on a separate staff, or in "compressed score"—*i.e.*, on two staves, as for the piano. (See examples to §§ 419, 421.) A canon written in this manner is called an "open canon." But there is another method of writing a canon, which has now to be explained. It was formerly the custom to write only the theme of the canon on one staff, indicating at the commencement the number of voices, and placing signs to show where and at what intervals the other parts entered. A canon written in this way is called a "close canon." The student must not confound this meaning of the word "close" with that which has been made use of in speaking of imitation (§ 289). As applied to canon, "close" simply means not written out in full.

426. The usual method of indicating the later entries of the parts in a canon was to place the sign § over the notes on which the parts were to enter. If the canon was in the unison, no further indication was necessary. Thus the canon by Friedemann Bach, given in § 420, would be written as a close canon, thus—



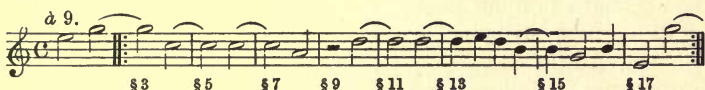
If, however, the entries of the other parts are at some other interval than the unison, it became necessary also to show at what interval these other voices entered. This was effected by adding figures to the sign §, placing the sign and figures *above*

the canon when the entry was for an upper voice, and *below* when it was for a lower. The figure gave the interval above or below *the first note of the subject*, and did not refer to the particular note over or under which it was written. Two examples will make this clear. We will write the little canon by Mozart, in § 418, as a close canon—



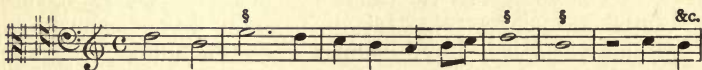
By comparing this with the open canon, it will be seen that, as all later entries are below the first, the figures are all under the subject, and that they are all reckoned from D, the first note, and not from the notes under which they are written. Occasionally, however, this method is departed from, somewhat to the perplexity of the student.

427. We now give the nine-part canon of § 423 in the same notation—

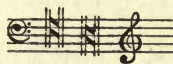


After what has been said, this example will be quite intelligible.

428 There is another method of indicating in a close canon the number of voices and the order of entry. This is, to prefix to the canon the various clefs of the different voice parts. Unfortunately, no uniform system is adopted as to the order in which these clefs shall stand. Albrechtsberger says that "when a canon is answered on the fifth or octave above, or on the fifth or octave below, it is usual to place the clefs of the voices, in the order in which they are to succeed, before the clef used for the commencement of the canon and before the signature is marked; then either the sign § or a figure indicating the distance of the interval shows the note on which the successive voices are to enter." On this method, the notation of the canon in § 417 would be—



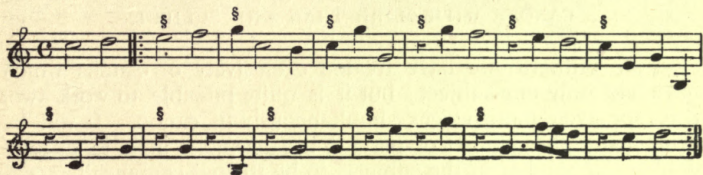
Sometimes, however, the clefs are all put in reversed order; *e.g.*, for the same canon—



while Marpurg, in some of his examples, gives the clefs in the regular order of entry of the voices. As close canons are seldom

written now, the matter is not of much practical importance; but it is well that the student should understand these signs if he meets with them in old music.

429. We will conclude this chapter with a specimen of a twelve-part infinite canon in the unison, taken from Marpurg. We shall give it as a close canon only; it will be interesting for the student to put it into open score for himself. He will find that the harmony is extremely simple, consisting of nothing but alternations of tonic and dominant chords—



CHAPTER XVI.

CANONS WITH MORE THAN ONE SUBJECT.

430. Hitherto we have treated exclusively of canons which have had only one subject; but it is quite possible to work two, three, or even more voices simultaneously in canon. It will be evident that the number of parts in the harmony must be at least double the number of the subjects to be treated canonically. On the continent a canon with two subjects is usually described as a Double Canon, one with three as a Triple Canon, and so on; but in England it is more usual to speak of them after the method explained in the last chapter (§ 424); and this method will, therefore, be that which we shall now follow.

431. The canons to be described in this chapter are the most elaborate, and in many cases the most difficult, that it will be necessary to study. It is true that there are other varieties which are more complicated; but these are of so little practical use that we do not recommend the student to trouble himself over them at all. We shall speak of them in our final chapter on "The Curiosities of Canon." Such double and triple canons as we are now about to notice are, on the other hand, of real artistic value; and it will be well worth the student's while to spend some time in trying to write them.

432. It is impossible to give any exact rules for the composition of a double or triple canon. Like the various kinds with which we are already acquainted, it must be worked in small sections, the length of which must depend on the distance of the time of entry of the different voices, and those parts which are fixed (that is to say, which are the canonic imitations of the themes given by the leading voices) must always be written in the imitating voices before the counterpoint is added to them in the other parts. Beyond these general directions it is not easy to assist the student, who will learn best how to work by the careful examination and analysis of the examples we are about to give him, which we shall accompany by such remarks as may be likely to be helpful.

433. We shall commence with a number of canons 4 in 2, that is to say, canons with two subjects, each subject being imitated in one other voice, thus making four parts in all. The

least difficult canon of this kind is one which resembles a Round (Chapter XI.), inasmuch as the two leading voices complete an entire phrase before the following voices enter. In this case the imitations will be almost always in the octave—either above or below, according to the voices which are selected to lead. Canons of this description are not very common; the following is a very good specimen by Mendelssohn—

MENDELSSOHN. "Lerchengesang," Op. 48, No. 4.

The musical score is for Mendelssohn's "Lerchengesang," Op. 48, No. 4. It is a canon for piano in G major, 4/4 time. The score is presented in six systems, each with a treble and bass staff. The music is characterized by its imitative texture, where voices enter in the octave. The first system shows the initial entry of the canon. The second system continues the canon with more voices entering. The third system includes a repeat sign and a key signature change to E major. The fourth system continues the canon in E major. The fifth system shows the canon continuing with various voice entries. The sixth system concludes the piece with a final cadence.



It will be seen that the above is an infinite canon; it concludes with seven bars of free *coda*, which it is not needful here to quote. As with a round for mixed voices (§ 330), it is of course necessary that the parts should be written in double counterpoint in the octave.

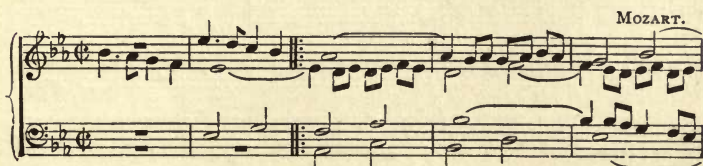
434. Our next example is taken from the organ works of Bach—

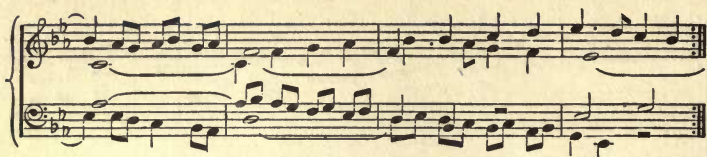
J. S. BACH. Organ Prelude on "In dulci jubilo."



As in the canon from Bach that we quoted in § 397, we have re-arranged the score, to make it easier to read. The choral printed on the middle staff is in the original given to the pedals. We have here the commencement of a finite canon, 4 in 2, in the octave; it is curious that Bach has throughout the movement written triplet quavers instead of crotchets in the counterpoint. For the slight alteration of the melody at (a) compare § 398.

435. In the two canons last given, the two upper voices have been imitated in the lower octave by the two lower ones. In our next examples other methods of procedure will be shown—



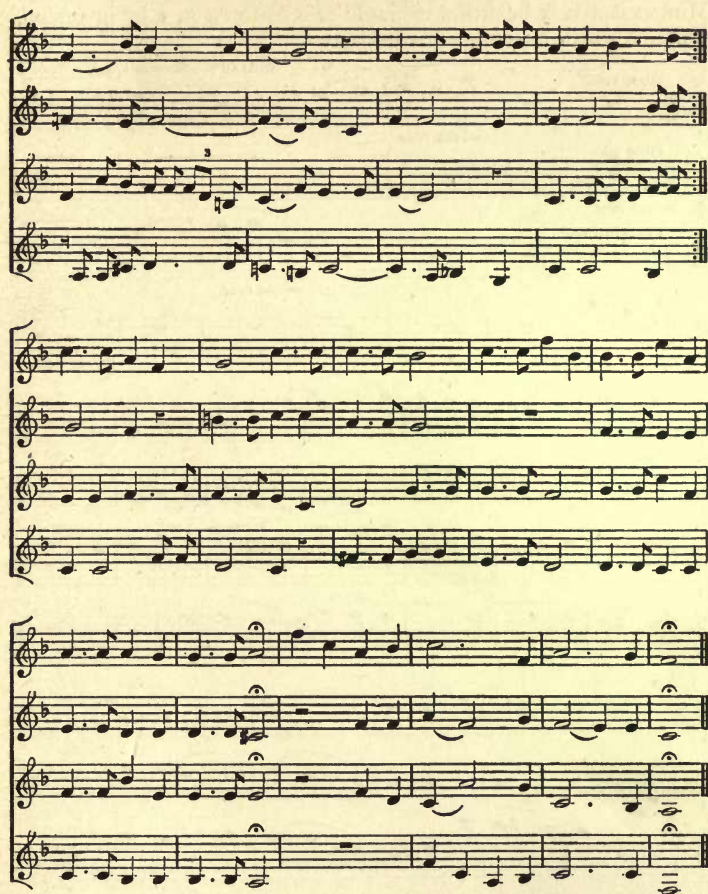


In this very neat infinite canon, 4 in 2, the subject announced by the alto is imitated in the fourth above by the treble, while the other subject, given to the tenor, is imitated in the fifth below by the bass.

436. Another specimen of an infinite canon, 4 in 2, of a rather different kind will be seen in the following—

SCHUMANN. "Die Capelle," Op. 69, No. 6.

A musical score for Schumann's "Die Capelle," Op. 69, No. 6. The score is written for four staves in 4/2 time, with a key signature of one flat (B-flat). The first system includes dynamic markings: *p/p* for the first staff, *p/p* for the second staff, *pp* for the third staff, and *pp* for the fourth staff. The score consists of four systems of staves, each with four staves. The music features a complex interplay of subjects and imitations, characteristic of an infinite canon. The notation includes various note values, rests, and repeat signs.



This little piece is the last of a collection of part-songs for female voices. The two subjects of the canon are announced in the first bar by the two treble voices, and imitated in the following bar in the fourth below by the two altos. Owing to the close position of the harmony, arising from the use of female voices only, it will be seen that the parts cross very freely. The canon, it should be observed, is not strict as to interval. There is a free *coda*, which we have quoted here, as, though not strictly in canon, it contains a good deal of free canonic imitation.

437. In § 374 we gave the commencement of the Minuet from Mozart's Serenade in C minor for wind instruments, as an example of an accompanied canon. The trio following this

Minuet is a very beautiful example of a canon 4 in 2 by inversion, which is worth quoting in its entirety—

MOZART. Serenade in C minor.

Oboe 1mo.

Oboe 2do.

Fagotto 1mo.

Fagotto 2do.

MESSA VOCE.

MESSA VOCE.

MESSA VOCE.



Here the second oboe is imitated in contrary motion by the first, and the first bassoon (with a different theme) in contrary motion by the second. In the first half of this piece, the variety of the imitation is that shown at (D) in § 281. But in the second half, while the oboes still retain the same imitation (answering tonic by dominant, and dominant by tonic), the second bassoon imitates the first after a different manner, answering tonic by tonic, and dominant by subdominant. (Compare (C) in § 281.) The last two bars before each double bar are free. The whole movement is a very fine illustration of the way in which, in the hands of such a master as Mozart, the most elaborate scientific contrivances can be employed without producing the least stiffness of effect; the music flows as naturally as if it were nothing but simple four-part counterpoint.

438. Our last example of a 4 in 2 canon is taken from Bach—

J. S. BACH. Cantata, "Ein' feste Burg."

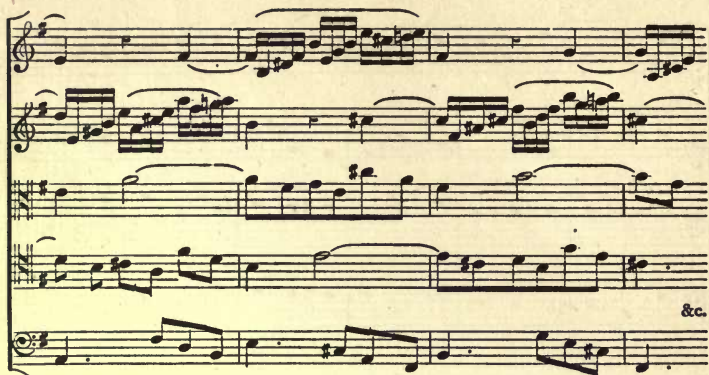
OBOE DA CACCIA.

VIOLIN.

ALTO SOLO.

TENOR SOLO.

CONTINUO.



Here we have a canon in the fourth below between the alto and tenor, and a second canon in the fifth above between the violin and the *oboe da caccia*,* the first note of the violin part being free. The difference between this and the examples previously given is that here, in addition to the double canon, we have an independent free bass part.

439. We now give some examples of canons in more than four parts. Our first is a very charming little specimen of an incidental canon, 6 in 3, from one of Mozart's little-known Masses—

Viol. 1. MOZART. Mass in D, No. 7.

CHORUS.

Bassi.

A musical score for a canon in 6/3 time by Mozart. It features three parts: Violin 1 (top staff, treble clef), Chorus (middle two staves, alto and tenor clefs), and Basses (bottom staff, bass clef). The key signature has two sharps (F# and C#). The score shows three canons, each in two parts, proceeding simultaneously. The Violin 1 part starts with a free note. The Chorus and Basses parts enter in canon with the Violin 1 part. The score ends with a double bar line.

Here we see three canons, each in two parts, proceeding simultaneously; an interesting point to notice is that each of the

* The *oboe da caccia*, frequently used by Bach, was a now obsolete species of oboe, the compass of which was the same as that of the modern *cor anglais*.

canons is at a different interval. That between the treble and alto is in the fifth below; between the tenor and bass it is in the seventh below; while the canon between the instrumental bass and the first violin is in the sixth above.

440. Our next illustration is the beginning of a canon 6 in 2 in the octave from a sextett for strings by Raff—

J. RAFF. Sextett, Op. 178.

ppp Scherzoso.

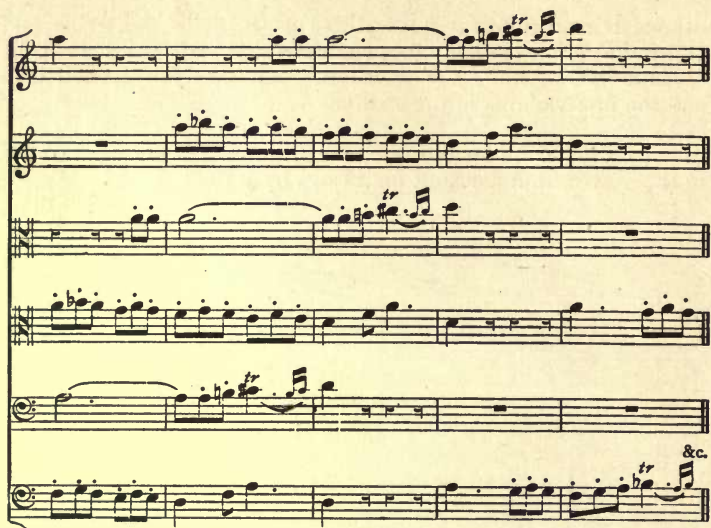
ppp Scherzoso.

ppp Scherzoso.

ppp Scherzoso.

ppp Scherzoso.

ppp Scherzoso.



The canon, which continues strict for 27 bars, is too long to quote entire. It will be seen that the harmony is at times somewhat free. It must be remembered that in pieces of such elaborate and artificial construction as a canon of this kind greater liberty will always be allowed than under ordinary circumstances. At the same time, such liberty must never degenerate into license.

441. The following short extract from the "Rex tremendae" of Mozart's "Requiem," is a fine example of a quadruple canon—8 in 4—

MOZART. "Requiem."

CHORUS.

S. A.

T. B.

ORCHESTRA.



Here there is a canon for the treble and alto in the fourth above, another for the tenor and bass in the fifth below; while the two lower string parts in thirds are imitated by the two upper parts, also in thirds, there being altogether eight parts, all moving in canon.

442. A different kind of canon (also 8 in 4) will be seen in our next illustration, which is taken from Cherubini's magnificent "Credo" for a double choir—

CHERUBINI. Credo à 8 voci.

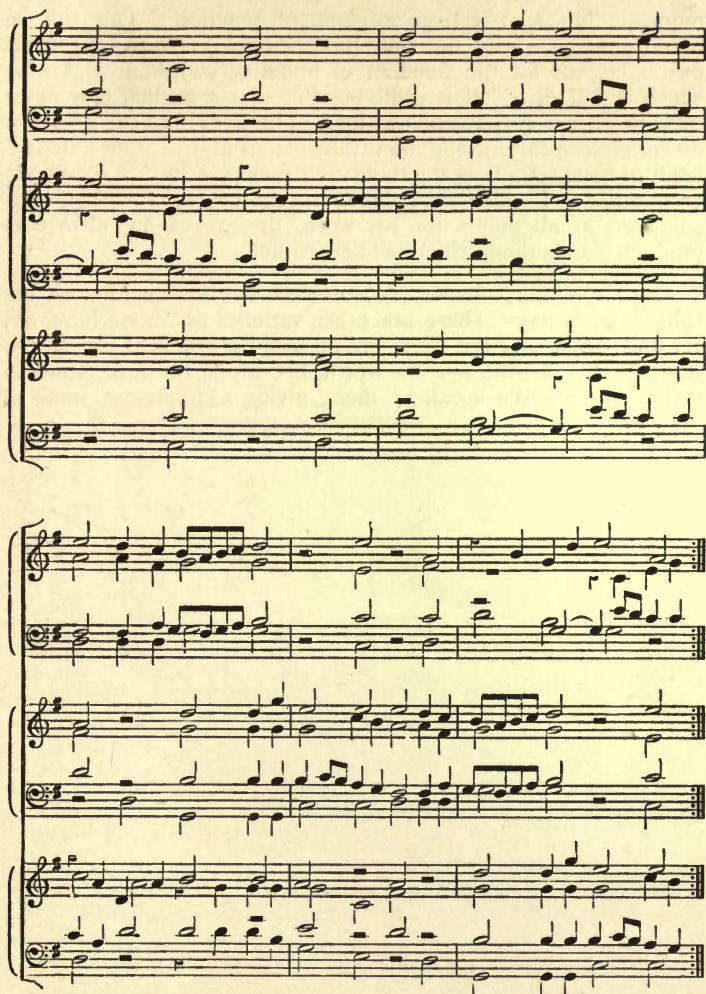
We give only the beginning of the canon, which extends over 38 bars, during the whole of which the first choir is imitated note for

note by the second at two bars' distance. The latter part of the canon, which we have not room to quote, is even more elaborate and intricate than the first. Every student should make the acquaintance of the masterly work from which this extract is taken.

443. Our last example is the most complex we shall have to give. It is a short infinite canon, 12 in 4, for three choirs, and, like the other examples by Mozart which we have quoted, is remarkable for the ease with which the master moves, in spite of his self-imposed fetters—

MOZART.

The musical score is for a short infinite canon by Mozart, 12 in 4, for three choirs. It is divided into two systems. The first system shows the 1st Choir, 2nd Choir, and 3rd Choir. The 1st Choir starts with a melody, while the 2nd and 3rd choirs enter later. The second system continues the canon, showing the 1st Choir's melody again, followed by the 2nd and 3rd choirs. The score is written in treble and bass staves for each choir, with a key signature of one sharp (F#) and a time signature of 12/4.



444. It will be readily seen that the composition of such canons as we have been treating in this chapter is a task of no ordinary difficulty, the more so because of the impossibility of laying down any definite rules as to their construction. More can be learned by the examination of good models than in any other way; and it is for that reason that such numerous and lengthy examples have been given. But to succeed in this department of work, not only considerable natural aptitude is

requisite, but a very large amount of practice. This will be found most beneficial, not only (nor perhaps even chiefly) for its own sake, but for the freedom of imitative contrapuntal writing which it will give. It is quite possible that a student may never want to write a 4 in 2 canon as long as he lives; but the *ability* to do so, if necessary, would be invaluable to him in such a department of composition as the thematic developments of a symphony or quartett. Besides this, the more thoroughly a composer is equipped at all points for his work, the greater his chance of producing something which is likely to live.

445. With this chapter we complete our instructions on the subject of canon. There are other varieties which we have not yet touched upon; but these are of so little practical use to the student that it will not be worth his while to waste time in writing them. We speak of them, giving examples of some of the more curious varieties, in our next chapter.

CHAPTER XVII.

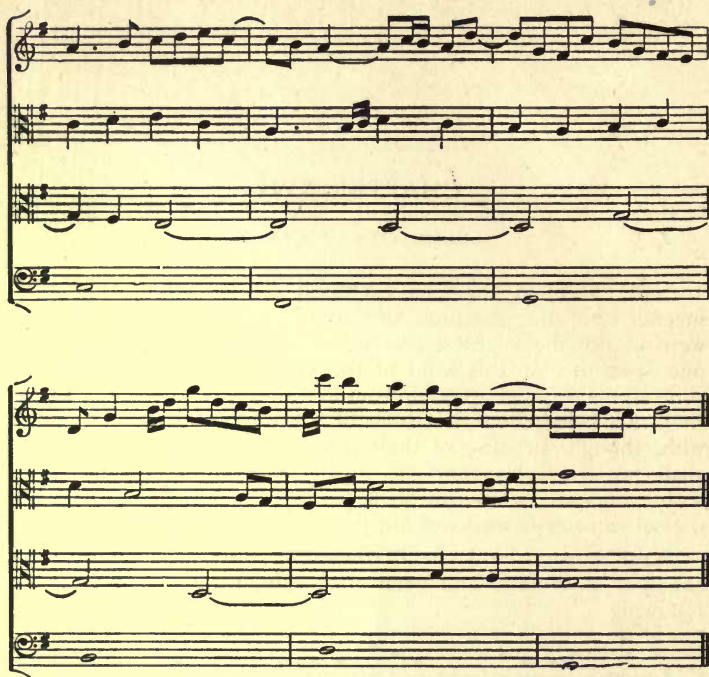
CURIOSITIES OF CANON.

446. The old theorists exercised an enormous amount of ingenuity in the invention of canonic devices, many of which were of not the slightest practical use. We have already given one specimen of this kind in the canon by augmentation and contrary movement quoted from Kirnberger in § 311; and we shall now briefly describe some of the chief varieties to be met with, though, because of their mostly unpractical character, we shall not give directions as to the method of writing them. Those who are curious in such matters will find instructions on the subject in the works of Marpurg and Lobe.

447. A favourite device of these old writers was to compose a canon with double, and even triple augmentation, such as the following—

S. SECHTER.

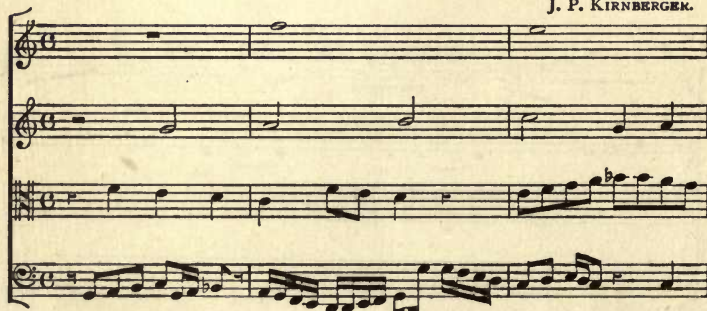
The musical score consists of two systems, each with four staves. The top staff of each system is in treble clef with a key signature of one sharp (F#) and a common time signature (C). The second staff is also in treble clef with the same key signature and time signature. The third staff is in alto clef (C4 on the third line) with the same key signature and time signature. The bottom staff is in bass clef with the same key signature and time signature. The music is a canon, with the first staff being the original melody and the subsequent staves being variations or augmentations of it. The notation includes various note values, rests, and bar lines, indicating a complex rhythmic structure.

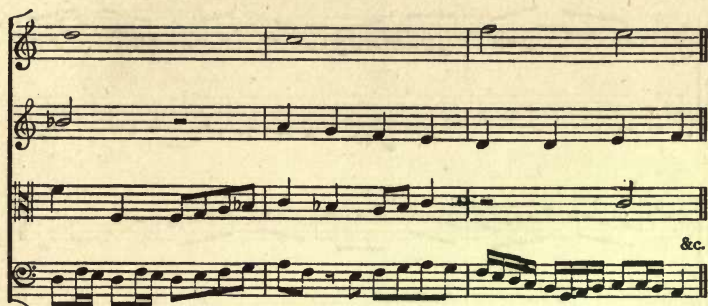


Here the second treble shows the augmentation, the alto the double, and the bass the triple augmentation of the subject given to the upper part. This is merely a canon to the eye, and not to the ear; it is of no musical value, and utterly useless except as an exercise of ingenuity.

448. Our next example is even more elaborate—

J. P. KIRNBERGER.

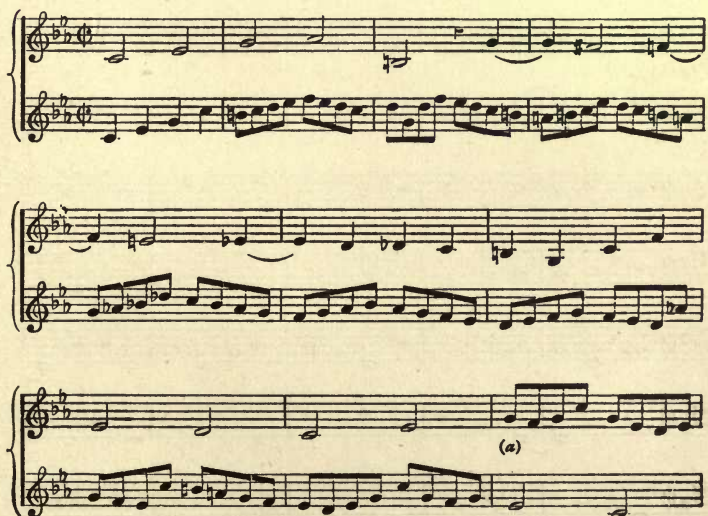


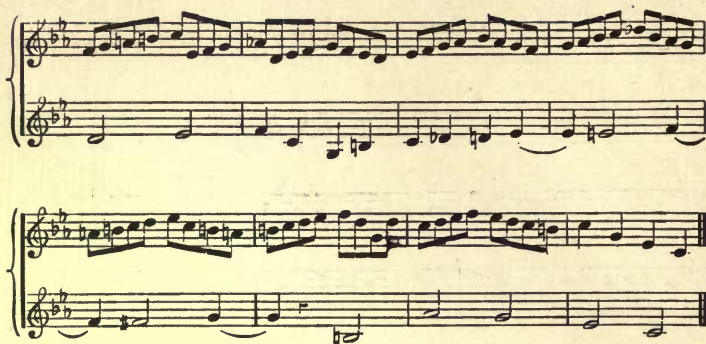


Here again the subject is given in notes of four different lengths ; but the alto and the first treble are in contrary movement to the other parts.

449. A species of canon frequently to be met with is a RETROGRADE CANON (*Canon Cancrizans*). In this, as explained in § 287, the notes of the subject are given in reversed order—that is, the answer of the canon is the subject read from right to left, instead of in the usual manner from left to right. Many very ingenious specimens of this kind of canon exist. The following is from Bach's "Musikalisches Opfer"—

J. S. BACH. "Musikalisches Opfer.

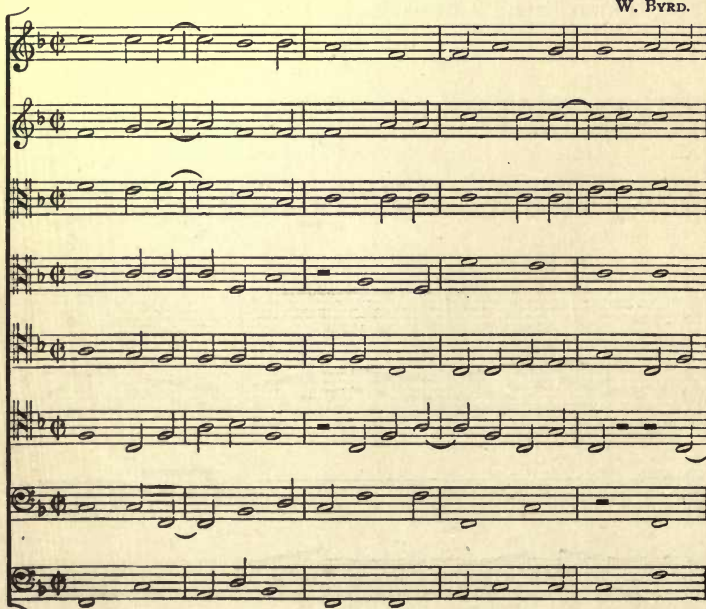


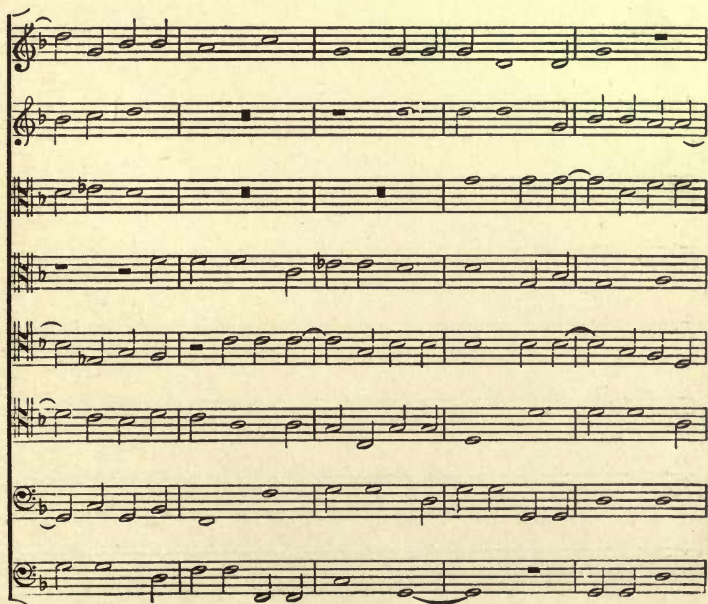
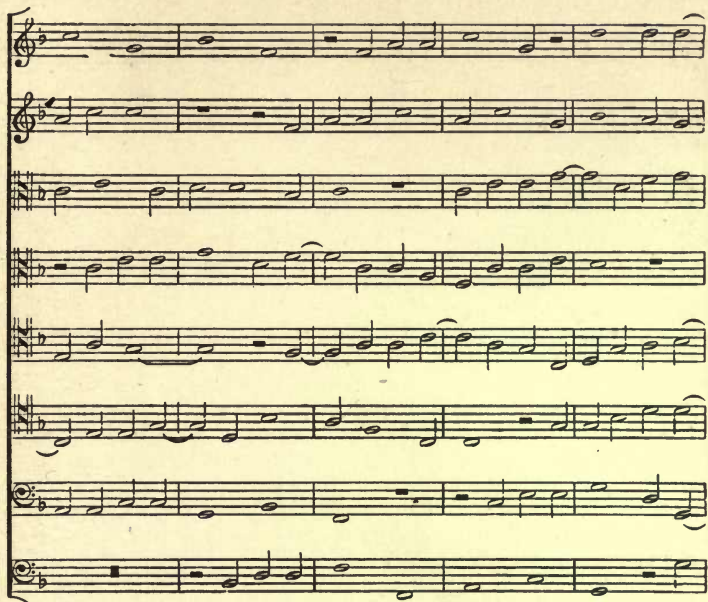


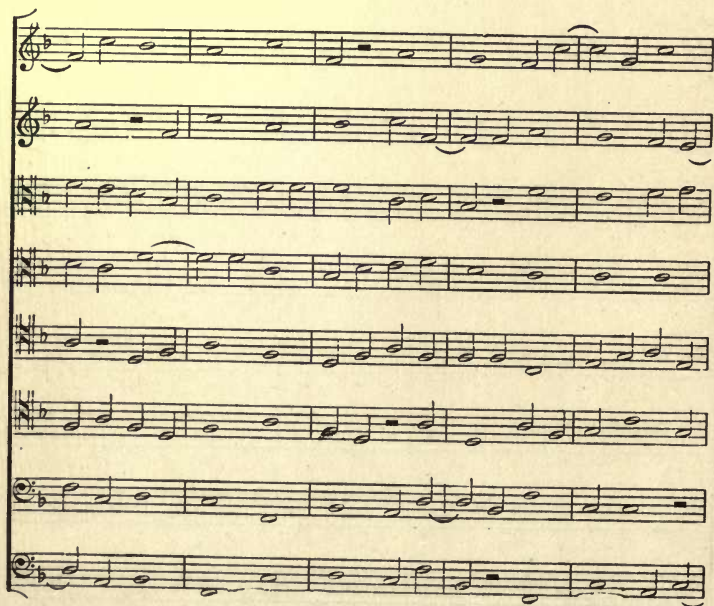
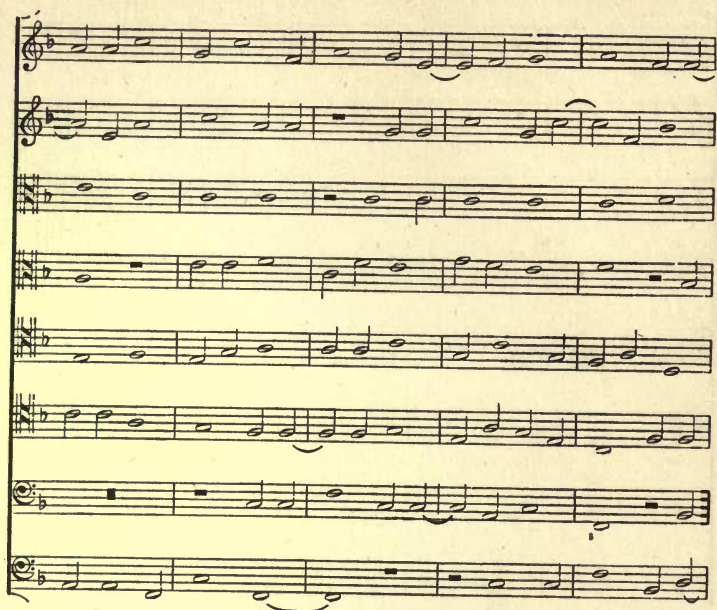
If this piece be examined, it will be seen that the lower part read backwards from the last bar to the first is the same as the upper line read in the ordinary way. In a canon of this description it is usual for the two voices to commence together, as in the present example. The upper part from (a) to the end is the same as the lower part read backwards from this point to the beginning, and *vice versa*.

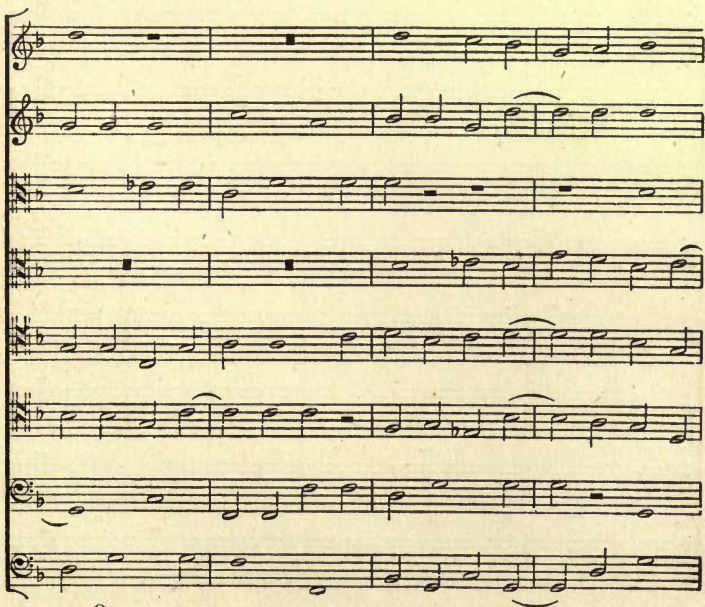
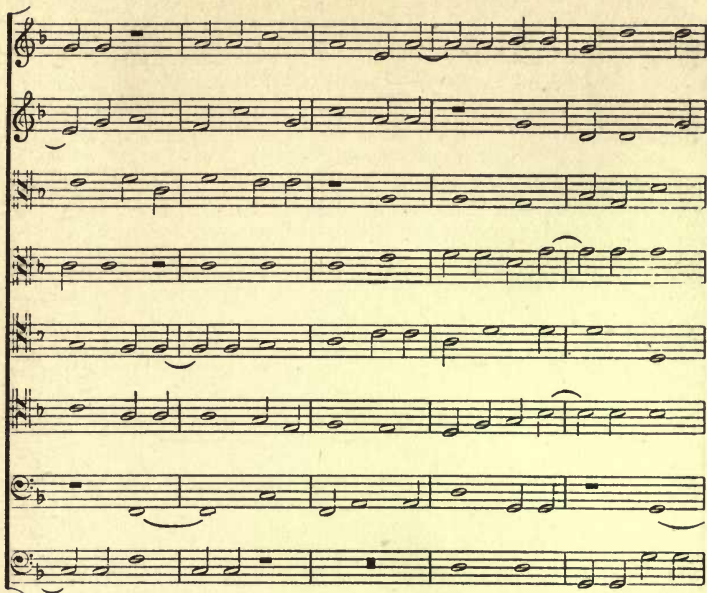
450. Our next example, quoted from Hawkins' "History of Music," is much more complex—

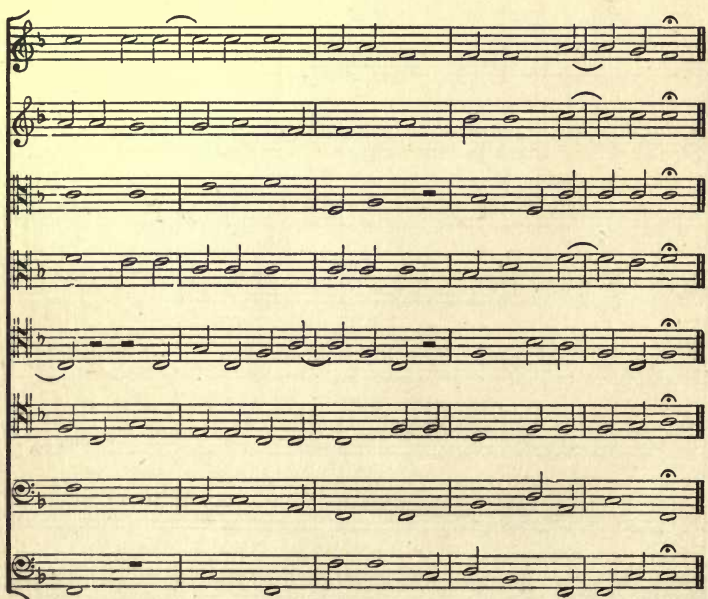
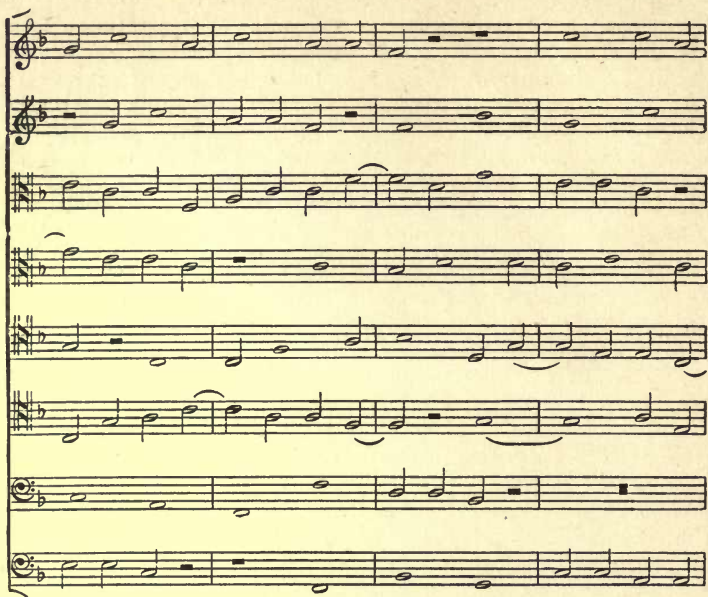
W. BYRD.







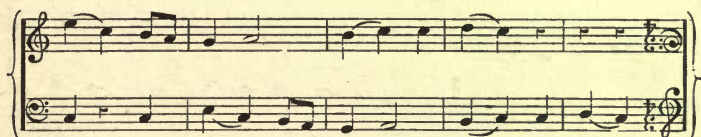
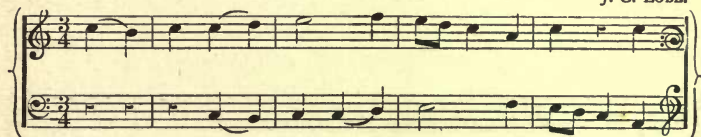




We have here a most elaborate retrograde canon, 8 in 4. The second treble part is the first treble read backwards, and the second alto, tenor, and bass parts are also their respective firsts by retrograde movement. Though rather long, it has been needful to give the whole piece here to render it intelligible. Let the student notice that in addition to the retrograde imitation we have spoken of there is also almost continuous close direct imitation between the voices. Truly the old masters of the Elizabethan age possessed rare skill in contrapuntal writing!

451. Another even more intricate kind of canon is the REVERSE RETROGRADE CANON. This is a canon so constructed that when the book is reversed (that is to say, when it is turned upside down), the music shall read the same as in the usual position. This is, of course, a mere curiosity; but a few examples will be worth giving. The first is by Lobe—

J. C. LOBE.

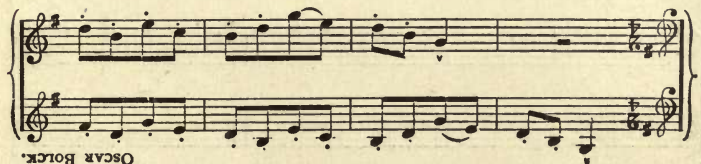
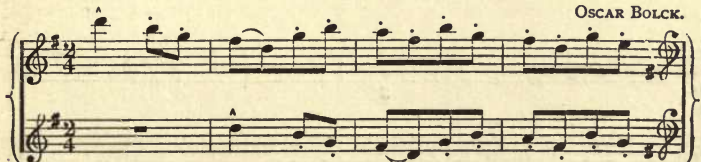


J. C. LOBE.

To indicate a canon of this kind, the inverted signature is placed at the end, as here.

452. Our next example is by a living German musician, and was published in the *Musikalisches Wochenblatt*—

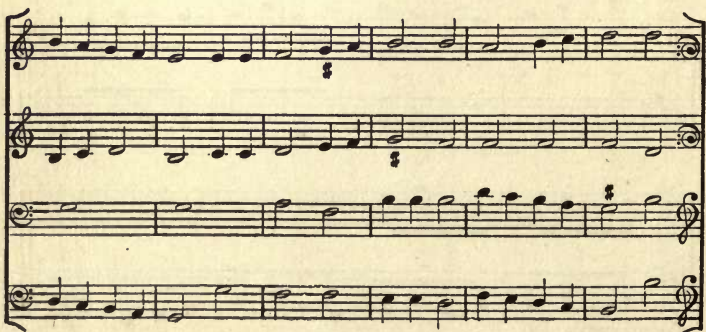
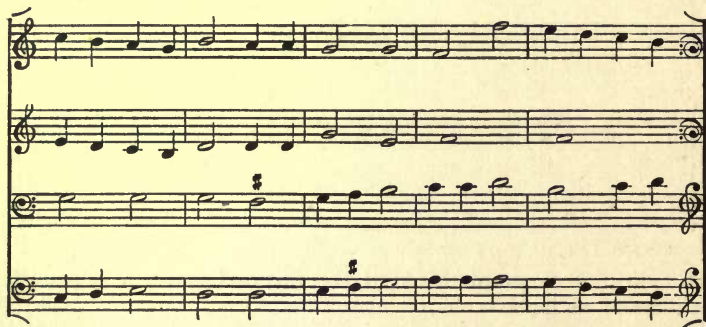
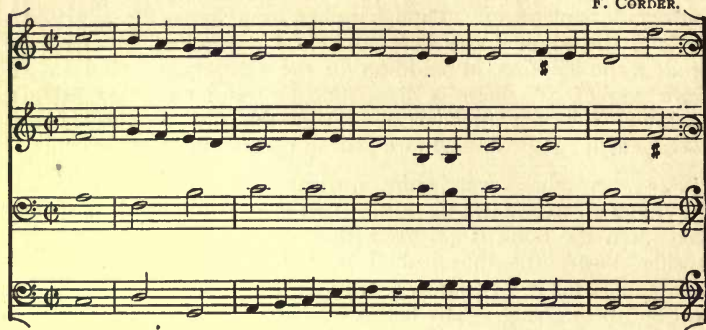
OSCAR BOLCK.

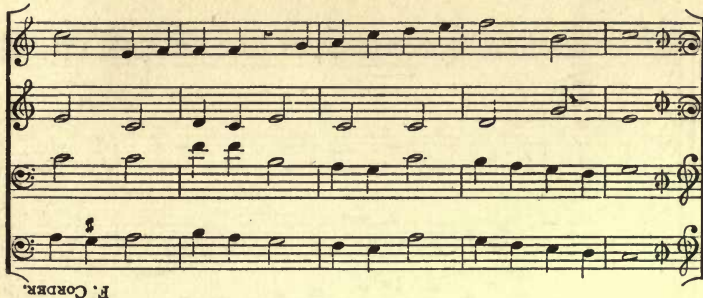


OSCAR BOLCK.

453. We now give a specimen by a living English composer of a reverse retrograde canon in four parts—

F. CORDER.





This is a different kind of canon from those given above. Here there is no canon by direct motion ; but it will be seen that when the book is turned upside down the whole composition is exactly the same as before. The accidentals are here printed under or over the notes, instead of before them in the usual way, as they are only wanted in one of the two positions.

454. Another highly ingenious, but, owing to its great difficulty, very rarely-used device is that known as canonic imitation *by Inverse Contrary movement*. This is a canon for a double choir, in which a theme is announced by one choir and answered by the other in the following manner—the movement is *inverse*—that is to say, the voices of the one choir are imitated by the other in reversed order, the treble of the first choir by the bass of the second, the alto by the tenor, the tenor by the alto, and the bass by the treble. Besides this, all the subjects are imitated by contrary movement. The chief rule to be observed in writing imitation of this kind is that none of the lower voices must ever sound the fourth below the treble except as a passing note. In Bach's "Art of Fugue" will be found a whole fugue (No. 12) which is inverted in this way ; but probably the finest example of imitation of this kind for two choirs is in Cherubini's "Credo" for a double choir, from which we quoted a passage in our last chapter (§ 442). This great work contains a canon of this kind 77 bars in length, which begins thus—

(a) S. A. CHERUBINI. Credo à 8 voci.

1st CHOIR.

T. B.

2nd CHOIR.

S. A.

T. B.

A musical score for a canon from Cherubini's "Credo à 8 voci". It is divided into two sections: "1st CHOIR." and "2nd CHOIR.". Each section has two staves, labeled "S. A." (Soprano and Alto) and "T. B." (Tenor and Bass). The music is in 4/4 time and F major. The notation shows the beginning of the canon, with the first choir starting on a whole note and the second choir entering with a more complex rhythmic pattern.

The musical score consists of three systems of staves. Each system has a vocal line (treble clef) and a piano accompaniment (bass clef). The key signature is one sharp (F#). The first system shows the vocal line with a melodic phrase and the piano accompaniment with a supporting bass line. The second system continues the melodic development with more complex rhythmic patterns. The third system concludes the phrase with a final cadence, marked with '&c.' in the piano part.

It will be seen that the first choir commences the imitation on the last note of each phrase sung by the second choir, and that the imitation is carried out in the manner just described. Towards the end of the canon the imitation becomes closer and more elaborate. We give the last nineteen bars—

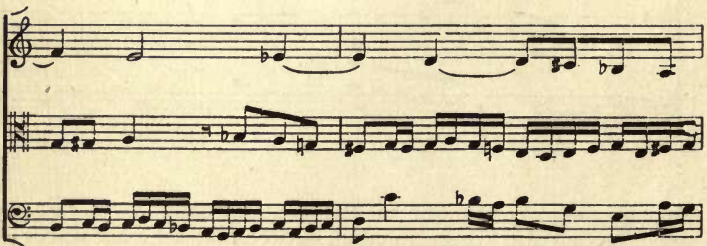
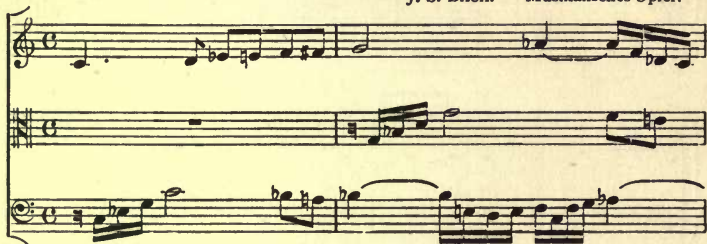
The musical score for the last nineteen bars consists of two systems of staves. Each system has a vocal line (treble clef) and a piano accompaniment (bass clef). The key signature is one sharp (F#). The first system begins with a dynamic marking of 'p' (piano). The vocal line features a melodic phrase, and the piano accompaniment provides a supporting bass line. The second system continues the melodic development with more complex rhythmic patterns, concluding with a final cadence.

The musical score is presented in two systems, each containing two staves (treble and bass clef). The notation is complex, featuring various rhythmic values, accidentals, and imitative entries between the voices. The first system shows a series of eighth and sixteenth notes, with some rests. The second system continues the pattern, with a final measure marked with a repeat sign and the text "&c." indicating a continuation of the pattern.

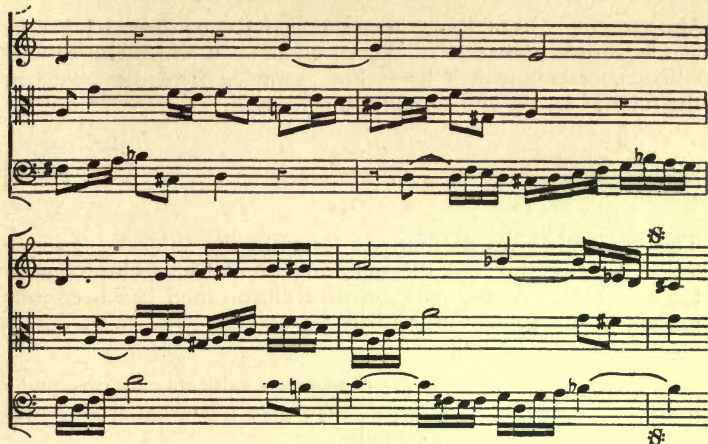
Here we not only have the inverse contrary imitation carried on as before, but also direct imitation between the different voices of the same choir. Besides this, the second choir is not now silent when the first enters. The whole passage is a masterpiece of scientific contrivance.

455. A CIRCULAR CANON is one which modulates so that each repetition is in a different key.* The most common variety is that in which each repetition is a tone higher than before; hence the old name for this species of canon, "*Canon per tonos.*" Obviously after six repetitions, each a tone higher, we shall return to the original key. If it is desired to pass through all twelve keys, each repetition must be either a semitone, or else a fourth or fifth, higher than the preceding. The following is a good example of a circular canon—

J. S. BACH. "Musikalisches Opfer."



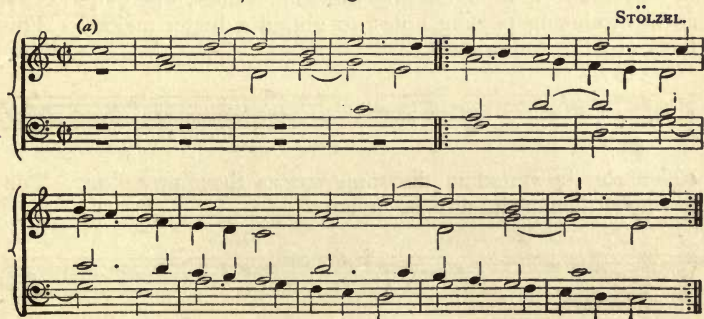
* Some writers use the word "circular" as equivalent to "infinite"; but it is more usual, and also preferable, to employ it in the sense we are now explaining.



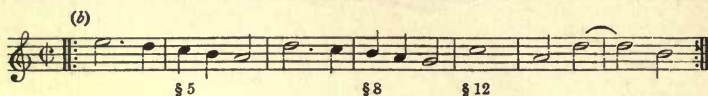
Here the upper part is a variation of the theme seen in our example to § 449. Below this theme are two parts in canon in the fifth. The music, beginning in C minor, modulates to D minor. The signs G, indicating an infinite canon, show where the repetition commences; but this repetition will now be a tone higher in all the parts. Evidently the two following repetitions will begin in E minor and F sharp minor; and so on to the end.

456. A POLYMORPHOUS CANON is one in which the same subject is capable of being worked in many different ways. The old theorists devoted much time and labour to the invention of such things. Marpurg gives the subject of a canon by Valentini which the composer worked in 2,000 different ways! But the most celebrated and best-known example of this kind of canon is one by Stölzel, written by him to disprove the assertion of an opponent that the possibilities of canon were exhausted. We give an abstract of Marpurg's analysis of this canon, which will show its chief features.

457. We first give the canon (which is an infinite canon 4 in $\bar{1}$, in the fifth and octave) in its original form—

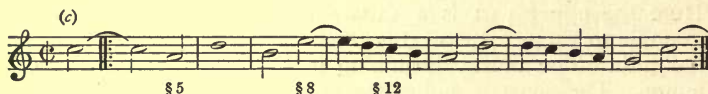


Marpurg remarks of this canon that it is so constructed that we can begin with any one of the seven bars of which the subject consists, or at any half bar. For example, if we commence at the fourth bar, the subject takes this form—



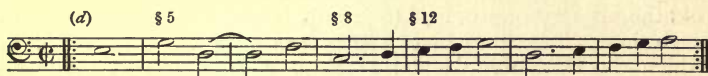
This evidently gives us fourteen forms of the subject. To save space, we give this and the following examples as close canons (§§ 425-427). As the notation of a close canon has been fully explained, the student will easily be able to write them out as open canons for himself.

458. But further, each of these seven subjects can be equally well treated *per arsin et thesin*. We give the original form thus altered as a specimen of them all—



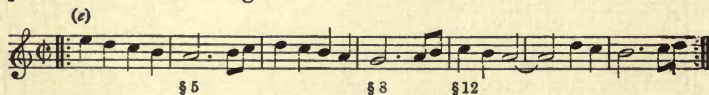
This clearly gives fourteen canons more, making twenty-eight.

459. The next step is to treat the subject by inverse contrary movement, as in the example by Cherubini in § 454. The canon then assumes the following form—

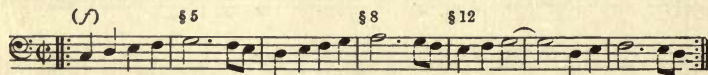


Pursuing the same method as before—that is, beginning at any half bar, and also treating the various forms of the subject *per arsin et thesin*, we obtain twenty-eight new canons, making altogether fifty-six.

460. The subject in the form first shown can also be taken by retrograde motion, altering the time values, where necessary, and introducing passing notes, to obtain a better melody. This produces the following—



which can be varied in the same way as those preceding. This last given theme can also be inverted—



461. By beginning with one of the middle voices, and varying the distance of time of entry, and the order of entry of the voices, many new combinations are obtained—

(g) § 4
 § 8 § 5
 (h) § 8 § 4
 § 5
 (i) § 8 § 12 § 5
 (k) § 8 § 11 § 4
 (l) § 12 § 8 § 5
 (m) § 11 § 8 § 4

The total possible combinations already given amount, according to Marpurg, to 392.

462. A new series of canons is obtained if we make the imitation closer. It will suffice to give one as an example—

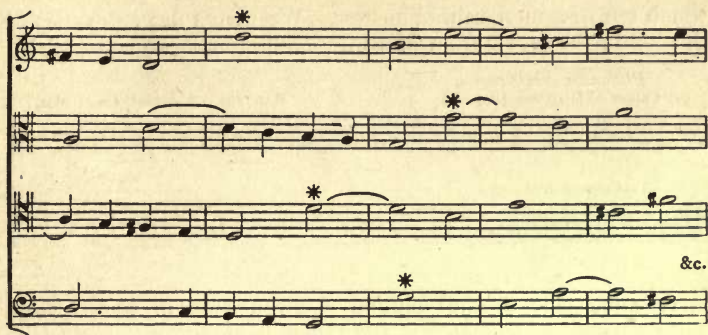
Eighty-four combinations of this kind are possible.

463. Lastly, the canon can be treated as a circular canon, by recommencing on the fourth below and fifth above alternately at each new repetition. The following example will show this clearly. The * shows the note on which in each of the voices the subject begins afresh—

A musical score for the song 'The Rose Tree'. It consists of four staves. The first staff is for the vocal melody, starting with a treble clef and a key signature of one sharp (F#). The second staff is for the piano accompaniment, starting with a grand staff (treble and bass clefs) and a key signature of one sharp. The third and fourth staves are for the piano accompaniment, starting with a grand staff and a key signature of one sharp. The music is in 4/4 time. The melody is simple and catchy, with a repeating pattern of eighth and quarter notes. The piano accompaniment provides a steady harmonic foundation with chords and moving lines in both hands. The score is written in a clear, legible hand, typical of early 20th-century musical notation.

A musical score for the song "The Rose Tree". The score is written for four voices: Soprano, Alto, Tenor, and Bass. The music is in 4/4 time and consists of four measures. The Soprano part begins with a treble clef and a key signature of one sharp (F#). The Alto, Tenor, and Bass parts begin with a bass clef. The melody is simple and catchy, with a repeating pattern of eighth and quarter notes. The lyrics "The Rose Tree" are written below the Soprano part. The score is marked with a copyright symbol and the year 1900.

A musical score for the song "The Rose Tree". The score is written on four staves. The first staff is a treble clef, and the second staff is an alto clef. The third and fourth staves are bass clefs. The music is in 2/4 time and features a melody in the first staff, a harmonic accompaniment in the second staff, and a bass line in the third and fourth staves. The lyrics are written below the staves.



Evidently we shall go through the entire "circle of fifths," and ultimately return to the key of C.

464. It need scarcely be said that but few subjects are capable of such infinite variety of treatment as that which has just been shown; but it is by no means difficult to write short and simple subjects for canon which are capable of many different treatments; and although a polymorphous canon is of but little use for its own sake, the practice of writing such is very valuable as a preliminary study for the *stretto* of fugues, as will be explained in the next volume of this series. To afford the student an opportunity of exercising his ingenuity in this direction, we give the subject of a polymorphous canon from Marpurg—



This simple scale passage can be treated as a canon at any interval, above or below, either by direct, contrary, or retrograde motion, *per arsin et thesin*, and by augmentation and diminution. Marpurg shows that more than a hundred different canons are possible on this subject in two parts only, while by adding thirds, sixths, or tenths to either or both of the two parts, the number of possible combinations is increased to over a thousand. And all this can be done with a simple scale!

465. The last kind of canon we shall describe is the RIDDLE-CANON. This is a variety of close canon (§ 425), in which the usual signs to indicate the place and interval of entry of the different voices are omitted. The number of voices is mostly given, though sometimes not even this is done. The old theorists wasted an immense amount of time and ingenuity in the invention and solution of such puzzles as these, with regard to which Marpurg pithily remarks that one fool can ask questions

which ten wise men cannot answer. We give a few curiosities of this kind ; the first is from Martini's "Storia della Musica"—

Plutonica subiit regna.
(a) Canon ad Diapason-Diapente. MARTINI. "Storia della Musica."

Tertia pars, si placet.

Here more clue to the solution is given than in some cases. The "Diapason-Diapente" is the Greek name for the interval of the twelfth ; and the Latin motto, "*Plutonica subiit regna*" ("He went down to the realms of Pluto"), is an obscure method of hinting that the canon must begin by *descending*. Here, therefore, is to be a canon in the twelfth by contrary motion, and the puzzle is to find where the imitation is to commence. The "*tertia pars, si placet*"—the third part, if desired—indicates a free bass *ad libitum*. The canon, it will be seen, is infinite, and the solution * is the following—

Of course the treble does not enter at first until the fourth bar.

466. A considerably more difficult example of a riddle-canon, taken from the same work, is the following—

* Reprinted by permission from the *Musikalisches Wochenblatt*.



Here we see that there are two subjects, before each of which four clefs are placed ; each is therefore to be sung by four voices, and the canon will be 8 in 2. The direct (w) put at the end of each subject, and referring back to the first note, shows that the canon is to be infinite. But no clue is given as to the order, interval, or distance of time of entry of the different voices. To solve such a riddle-canon as this, it would be needful to try the subjects at all possible intervals, by direct, inverse, and retrograde imitation, even by augmentation and diminution, until success rewarded our efforts. In the present case the true solution was given in the *Musikalisches Wochenblatt* for 1880. We reprint it, as a remarkably neat specimen—

(b) S. A.

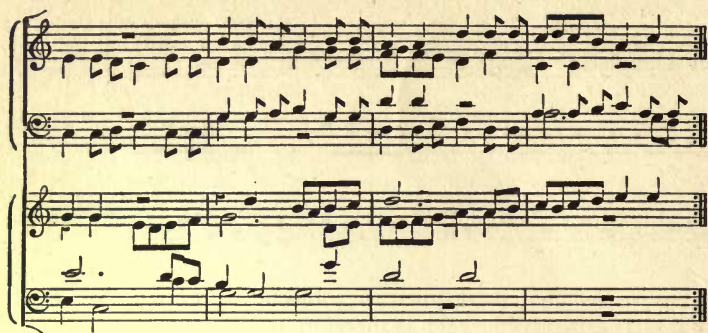
1st CHOIR.

T. B.

S. A.

2nd CHOIR.

T. B.



Each subject is here treated as a canon in the fifth above, the second choir entering four bars after the first.

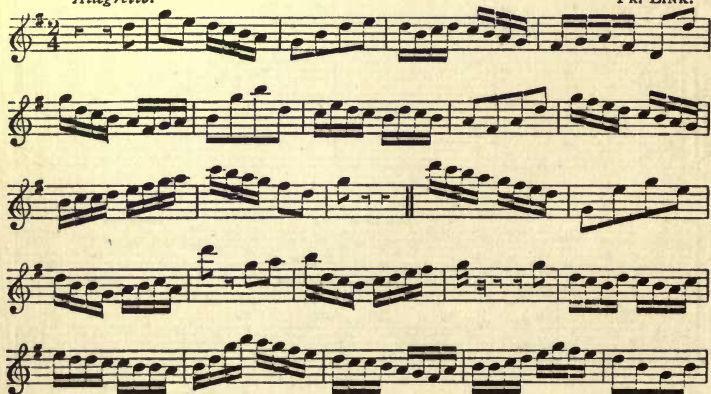
467. Two very clever riddle-canons, one for two, and the other for four voices, are to be found in Bach's "*Musikalisches Opfer*." The former, to which the composer has prefixed the motto "*Quærendo invenietis*" ("Seek, and ye shall find"), is capable of four different solutions. Both canons are unfortunately too long to quote here.

468. That the art of composing riddle-canons is not yet lost will appear from the following very ingenious example by Fr. Link, which was published some years since in the *Musikalisches Wochenblatt*—

DUO FOR TWO VIOLINS.

Allegretto.

FR. LINK.



This veritable puzzle illustrates a variety of riddle-canon which we have not yet seen—that in which the bars are not to be read in the usual order; it is somewhat similar to the *canon cancrizans* (§ 449), though with a difference. The difficulty is to discover

the order in which the bars are to be taken. The only clue afforded is the double bar in the third line, which seems to suggest that this is the final bar of the piece.

469. The author's solution of the riddle is as follows: "The above piece in two parts is a special modification of the retrograde canon by contrary motion (*canon cancrizans in motu contrario*). The first part begins above at the first bar, and takes all the bars in the order indicated by the figures—

VIOLINO 1mo.

Allegretto.

VIOLINO 2do.

when the notes of bars 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 21, 22, and 23, must be read *backwards*—from right to left. The close of this part is bar 25 in the middle. The second part turns the music upside down, as shown by the clefs, and performs the whole piece simultaneously with the first part, beginning with bar 25 of the first part. The second part takes the bars in the order indicated above them, reading the notes of bars 3, 4, 5, 13, 14, 15, 16, and 17 backwards—from right to left. This part ends with bar 1 of the first part, which is its 25th bar. The succession of the bars is arranged as a spiral, which with the first voice runs from the outside to the centre, and with the second in the reverse direction; the whole in its peculiar arrangement thus forming a so-called musical labyrinth."

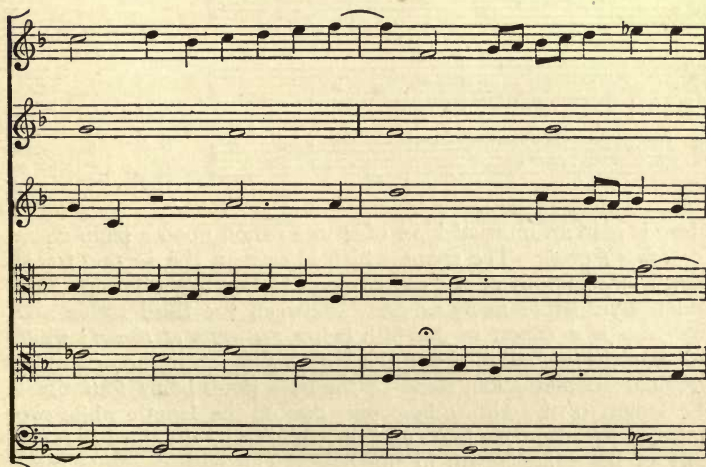
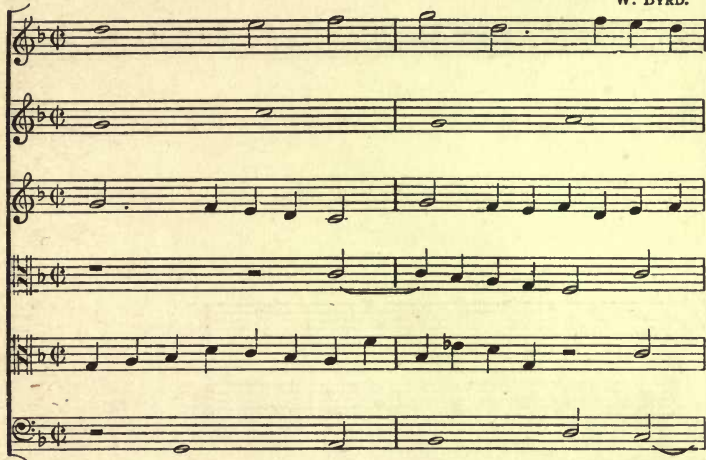
470. We now give the two voices together in score—

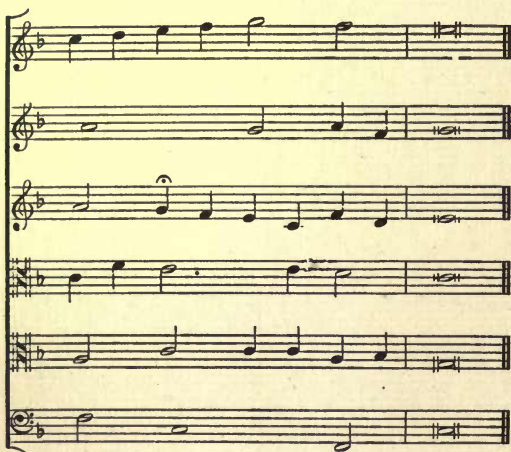
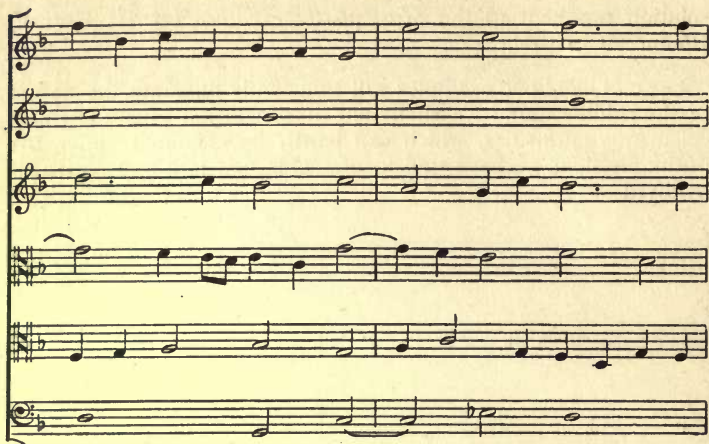
It will be seen that we have here a reverse retrograde canon (§ 451). It is of little musical value except as a curiosity. Perhaps even more surprising than the ingenuity displayed in its invention is the fact that it should have been solved. The

solution was sent to the *Musikalisches Wochenblatt* by Herr F. Böhme, of Leipzig.

471. The above examples will sufficiently illustrate the nature of the riddle-canon; we shall now in conclusion give a few miscellaneous curiosities, which can hardly be classified under any of the divisions we have spoken of. Our first is a fine specimen by Byrd—

W. BYRD.



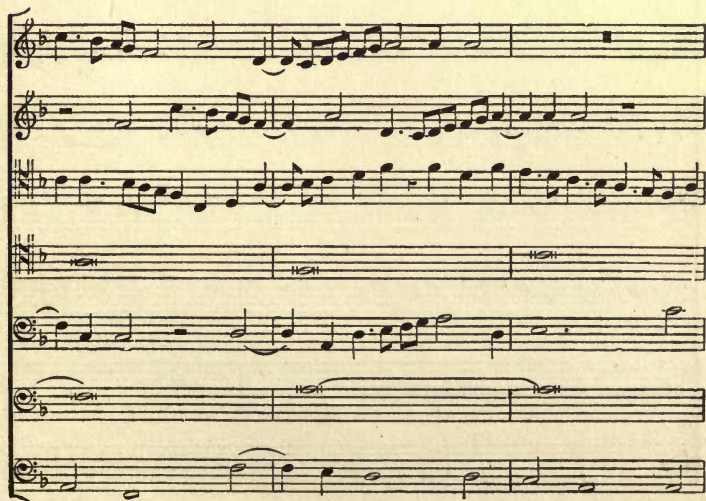
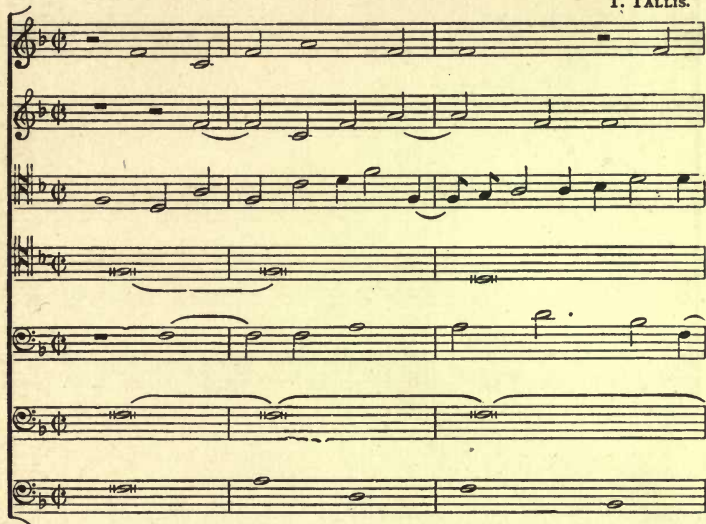


Here is seen an unusual kind of 4 in 2 canon upon a plain chant (or *canto fermo*). The chant, which is seen in the second treble part, is the melody of the old hymn, "O Lux beata Trinitas," on which Byrd wrote many canons. Between the third treble and first alto is a canon in the fifth below *per arsin et thesin*; while between the second alto and the bass is a canon in the octave by irregular augmentation, some of the bass notes being four times the length of the alto, others only double the length, while two notes of the alto (the first and third minims of the third bar) are only of the same length in the bass. The pauses in the third

treble and second alto parts do not indicate a rest on those notes, but merely show how far the canon is carried in the imitating voices. The first treble part is free.

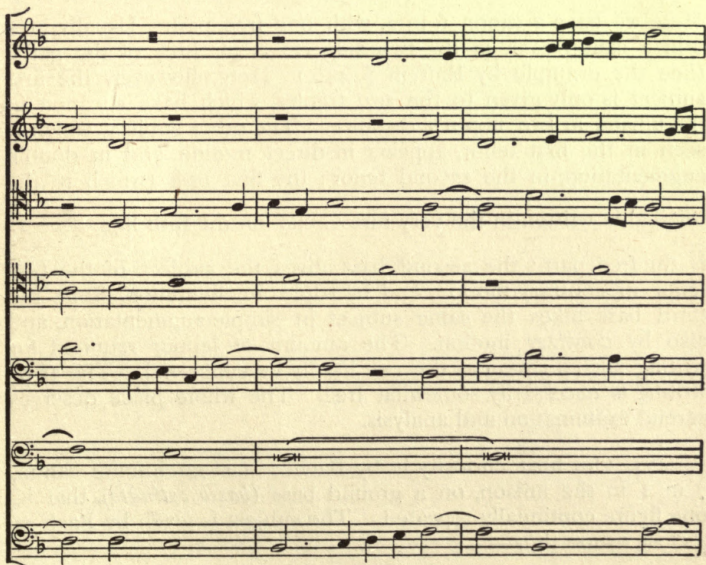
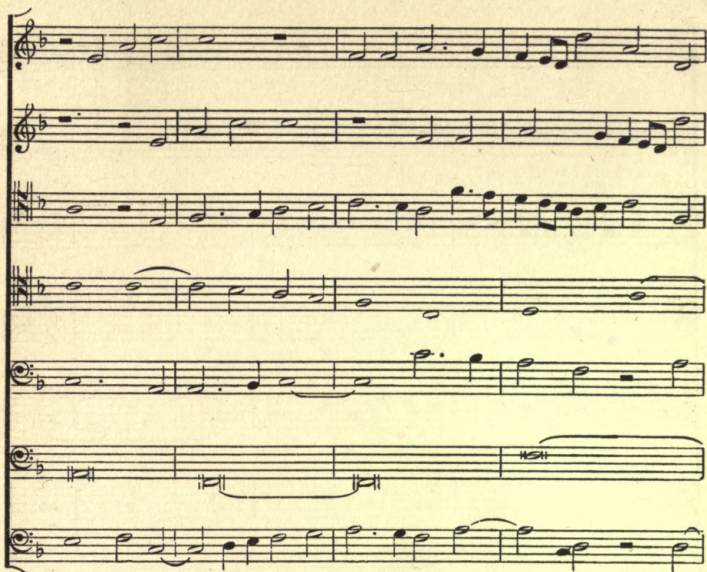
472. Our next example, a "Miserere" by Tallis, is of an extremely complicated description—

T. TALLIS.




The first system of musical notation consists of seven staves. The first two staves are in treble clef with a key signature of one flat (B-flat). The third staff is in alto clef with a key signature of one flat. The fourth staff is in alto clef with a key signature of one flat. The fifth staff is in bass clef with a key signature of one flat. The sixth staff is in bass clef with a key signature of one flat. The seventh staff is in bass clef with a key signature of one flat. The notation includes various musical symbols such as notes, rests, and slurs.

The second system of musical notation consists of seven staves, continuing the musical piece from the first system. The staves are arranged in the same order and clefs as the first system. The notation includes various musical symbols such as notes, rests, and slurs.

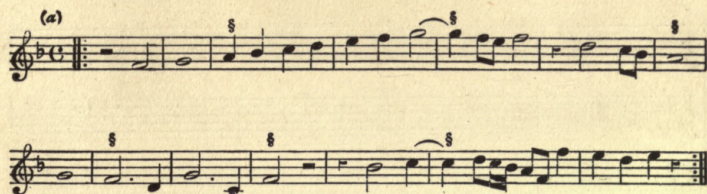




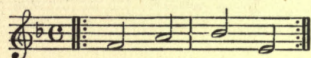
Here we have a canon 6 in 2, with one free part. Usually in a 6 in 2 canon each of the two subjects is in three of the parts. (See the example by Raff in § 440.) Here, however, the first subject is only given to the two trebles, which have a canon in the unison at two minims' distance. The other subject, which is seen in the first tenor, appears in direct motion, and in double augmentation, in the second tenor; the first bass (which in the original is written in the very rare C clef on the fifth line, )

is the free part; the second bass gives the subject of the first tenor in contrary motion, and by triple augmentation, while the third bass takes the same subject in simple augmentation, and also by contrary motion. The amount of labour required for writing such a canon as this can hardly be conceived. The part-writing is necessarily somewhat free. The whole piece deserves careful examination and analysis.

473. Our next curiosity is by Bach. It is an infinite canon, 7 in 1 in the unison, on a ground bass (*basso ostinato*), that is, one figure continually repeated. The subject is given by Bach as a close canon thus—



The ground bass, which serves as a perpetual accompaniment, is the following—

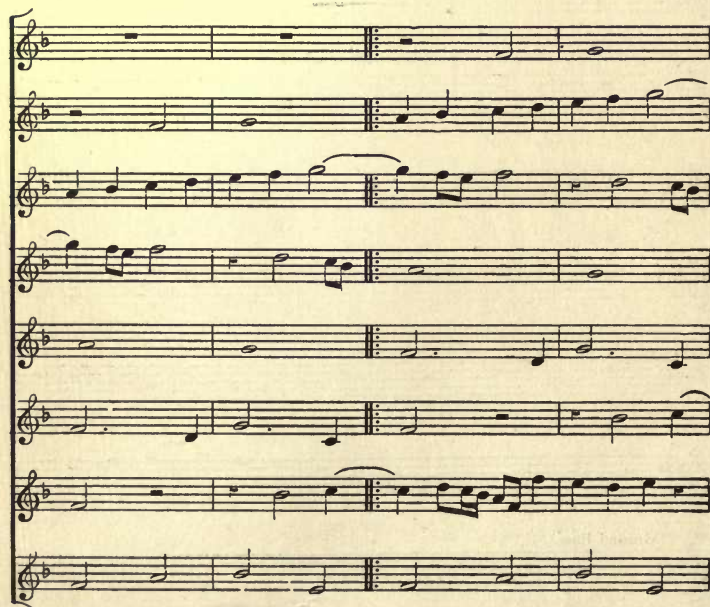
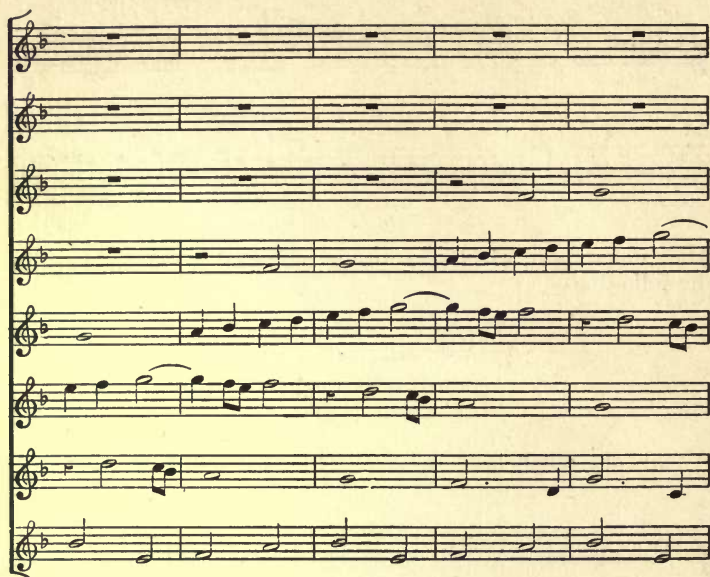


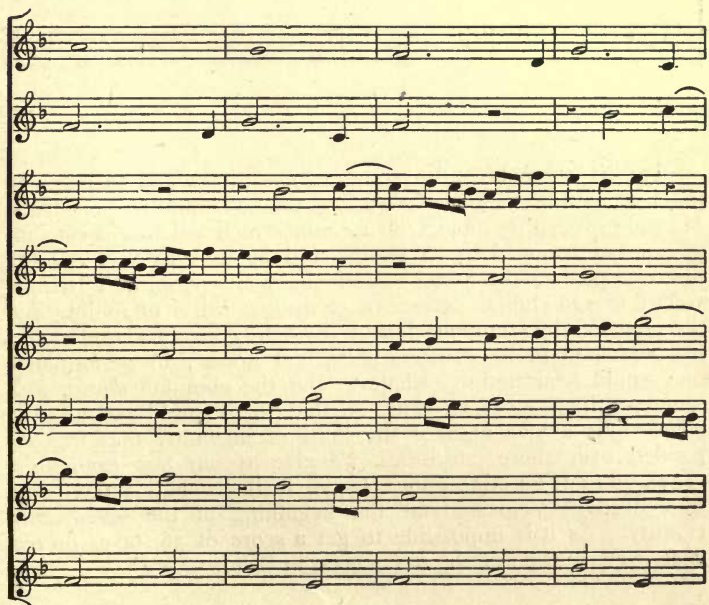
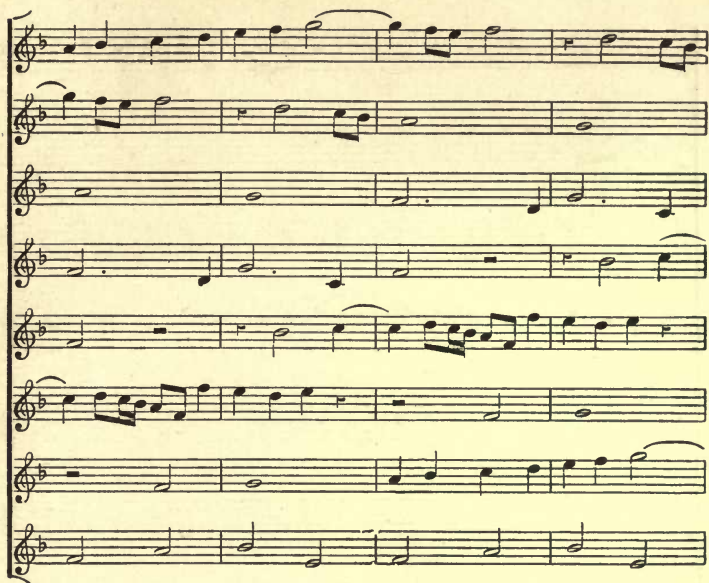
We give the canon in score—

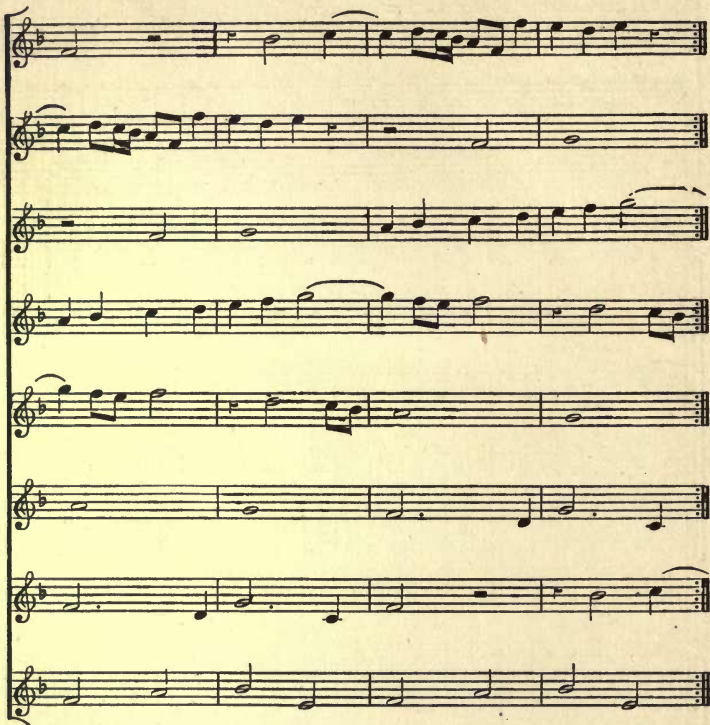
(b)

J. S. BACH.

Ground Bass.







474. It was a favourite amusement with the old theorists to practise writing canons for an enormous number of parts. Marpurg gives the subject of a canon which Valentini wrote for 96 voices, arranged in 24 choirs, and he tells us that Kircher discovered that the same canon could be performed by 512 voices, or 128 choirs. The subject itself consists of nothing but the notes of the common chord. Evidently such a canon as this has no claim to be considered as real music; in performance one would hear nothing whatever but the common chord, with the parts incessantly crossing, so that there could be no clear effect. As a specimen of the kind of ingenuity that was expended over these curiosities, we give as our last example a canon 36 in 1, for nine choirs, by Michielli Romano, a composer who lived at Venice about the beginning of the seventeenth century. As it is impossible to get a score of 36 staves on our page, we give each of the nine choirs in "short score"—

MICH. ROMANO.

1st Choral.

2nd Choral.

3rd Choral.

4th Choral.

5th Choral.

6th Choral.

7th Choral.

8th Choral.

9th Choral.

This image shows a handwritten musical score for a Canon, consisting of ten systems of two staves each. The notation includes treble and bass clefs, a key signature of one sharp (F#), and various musical symbols such as notes, rests, and bar lines. The score is written in ink on aged paper.

The first system shows a complex melodic line in the treble staff and a more rhythmic accompaniment in the bass staff. The second system continues this pattern with some variations in the melodic line. The third system introduces a new melodic phrase. The fourth system shows a continuation of the previous phrase. The fifth system introduces a new melodic phrase. The sixth system continues this pattern with some variations in the melodic line. The seventh system introduces a new melodic phrase. The eighth system continues this pattern with some variations in the melodic line. The ninth system introduces a new melodic phrase. The tenth system continues this pattern with some variations in the melodic line.

This page contains eight systems of musical notation, each consisting of a treble and a bass staff. The notation is a canon, likely for two voices or instruments. The key signature is one sharp (F#), and the time signature is common time (C). The music features a variety of note values, including minims, crotchets, and quavers, as well as rests. Dynamic markings such as 'p' (piano) are present throughout. The notation includes many beamed notes and slurs, indicating complex rhythmic patterns and phrasing. The page is numbered 271 in the top right corner, and the chapter is identified as XVII in the top left.

This page contains ten systems of musical notation for a Canon. Each system consists of two staves, one with a treble clef and one with a bass clef. The notation includes various musical notes (quarter, eighth, and sixteenth notes), rests, and dynamic markings such as 'p' (piano) and 'f' (forte). The music is written in a single key signature, which appears to be one flat (B-flat). The notation is arranged in a continuous flow across the ten systems, with some systems showing more complex rhythmic patterns and others showing simpler, more sustained notes. The overall style is that of a classical musical score, likely from the 18th or 19th century.

Here the tenor part of the first choir imitates the bass, by contrary motion throughout; the alto and treble commence at the half bar, taking the octave above the bass and tenor parts. Each successive choir enters in the same way one bar later than the preceding. The marks \times indicate the crossing of the voices. It will be seen that the musical effect of the whole is by no means exhilarating; such canons as these are not of the slightest use when they are written. We have inserted this one simply as a curiosity, and to show the student what these canons with a multitude of parts were really like.

475. Here our task ends.* The student who desires to go deeper into these curiosities can find further details in the works of Marpurg and Lobe. Our object is simply to teach such matters in connection with canon as are likely to be practically serviceable. The great use of canonic writing is not so much for its own sake as for the freedom that the study gives in fugal, and to a considerable extent also in symphonic, composition. Those who have thoroughly mastered the contents of this volume will find their acquired knowledge invaluable if they proceed to the next step in composition—the writing of fugue, which will form the subject of our next volume

THE END.

ANALYTICAL INDEX

TO

"DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT AND CANON."

* * * *The numbers refer to the paragraphs, not the pages.*

Accidentals, introduction of, in double counterpoint, 124, 147, 178.

ACCOMPANIED CANON defined, 362, 374; examples of, 374-377.

Added thirds and sixths in double counterpoint in the tenth, 80, 156-159.

ADDED FREE PARTS in *double counterpoint* defined, 134. Exercises worked, 192-201. *Examples from old masters*, 207-215; in *canon* defined, 362. Exercises worked, 365-367. *Examples from old masters*, 369-373.

All harmonic resources available in free double counterpoint, 102.

ALTERATION, CHROMATIC, of notes in *free double counterpoint*, 138, 139; in triple counterpoint, 257; in *canon*, 393.

Alteration of subject in free double counterpoint, 141, 146, 150.

Any number of parts possible in a canon, 407.

Appoggiatura defined, 147 (*note*).

Arsis et thesis, defined, 283.

ARSIN ET THESIN, imitation per, 292; canon per, 354.

AUGMENTATION, *imitation by*, defined, 284; example of, 299; *canon by*, defined, 284, 311; example of, 405.

Augmentation and contrary motion, canon by, 311.

AUGMENTATION AND DIMINUTION, finite canon by, 350; infinite canon by, 351.

AUGMENTED SECOND AND FOURTH IN MELODY in *strict* double counterpoint, 57, 58, 86; in *free* double counterpoint, 112.

Augmented sixth, treatment of, in free double counterpoint, 109.

AUXILIARY AND PASSING NOTES in *strict* double counterpoint, at the eighth, 28, 30, 31; at the tenth, 70, 71; at the twelfth, 92; in *free* double counterpoint, 102, 189, 190.

Cadence, free, defined, 29.

Cancrizans, meaning of, 449.

CANON, accompanied (*see* Canon IV.); alteration of interval in, 309; any number of parts possible in, 290, 407; by augmentation defined, 284, 311; example of, 405; by augmentation and contrary motion, 311; by augmentation and diminution, 350, 351; by diminution defined, 284; by double and triple augmentation, 447; by inversion, 280, 334; by inverse contrary movement, 454; 'cancrizans' defined, example of, 449; chromatic alteration of notes in, 393; circular, defined, example of, 455; close, defined, 425, 426; examples of, 426-429; curiosities of canon (*see* Canon IX.); defined, 308, 311; direct imitation in, 279; double (*see* Canon VIII., *a*); finite (*see* Canon II., *a*); free as to intervals, 339; in two parts (*see* Canon II., *a*, *b*); in three parts (*see* Canon VII., *a*, *b*); in four parts (*see* Canon VII., *c*, *d*); in six parts (*see* Canon VII., *e*); in seven parts, 473; in nine parts (*see* Canon VII., *f*); in thirty-six parts, 474; in enormous number of parts, 474; infinite (*see* Canon II., *b*); invertible, example, 166; nomenclature of, 424; on a canto fermo (*see* Canon V.); on a choral (*see* Canon VI.); on a ground bass, 473; on one

subject in more than two parts (*see* Canon VII.); open, defined, 425; per arsin et thesin, 305, 354; polymorphous (*see* Canon IX., *f*); quadruple (*see* Canon VIII., *c*); rests, introduction of—why, 417; retrograde (*see* Canon IX., *g*); riddle (*see* Canon IX., *i*); round (*see* Canon I.); strict as to intervals, 339, 340; symmetry, and form in, 346; triple (*see* Canon VIII., *b*); varieties of, 311; with free parts (*see* Canon III.); with reversed accents (*per arsin et thesin*), 283, 354; with two subjects (*see* Canon VIII., *a*); with three subjects (*see* Canon VIII., *b*); with four subjects (*see* Canon VIII., *c*).

I. THE ROUND, crossing of parts in, 314; defined, 312; employment of, in opera, etc., 331. *Exercise worked*, in three parts, 318-321; in four parts, 322; melodic interest in, importance of, 317; methods of composing, 315, 316. *Examples by the great masters*, (*a*) in three parts, by Cherubini, with orchestral accompaniment, 330; by Dr. Hayes, 323; by Beethoven, 326; (*b*) in four parts, by Mozart, 324; by Beethoven, 327; (*c*) in six parts, by Mozart, 325; by Beethoven, 328.

II. CANON IN TWO PARTS, 332; varieties of, 334; (*a*) *Finite canon*, crossing of parts in, 337; defined, 310, 332. *Exercises worked*, in the octave, 336; in the fourth below, strict as to intervals, 340; how to write, 335, 336; imitation, strict and free as to interval, 339; interval of reply, 337; interval of time of reply, 338. *Examples by the great masters*, by Dussek, at the seventh below, in double counterpoint, 358; by Bach, at the ninth below, 353; by Schubert, at the octave, 355; by W. Fr. Bach, at the octave, by augmentation and diminution, 350; by J. C. Lobe, at the octave, by augmentation and diminution, 350; by Mozart, at various distances, 357; (*b*) *Infinite canon*, coda in, 342; defined, 310. *Exercises worked*, in the octave above, 342; in the tenth above, 344; in the ninth above, 345; in the fourth below, strict as to intervals, 347; in the fifth below, free as to intervals, 348; by inverse

movement, 349; how to write, 341, 342; making the join, 341, 342. *Examples by the great masters*, by Bach, in the octave, 352; by C. P. E. Bach, by augmentation and diminution, 351; by Clementi, by inversion, 359; by Haydn, in the octave, 356; by Mozart, in the unison, 354.

III. CANON WITH FREE PARTS. *Free parts*, consecutive fourths, 363; defined, 362; how to write, 361-364; must be contrapuntal, 362; no rules can be given for, 364; to be composed simultaneously with the canon, 365. *Exercise worked*, with free middle part, 365; with free bass part, 366; with two free parts, 367. *Examples by the great masters*, by Bach, in the third below, with free bass part, 369; by Bach, in the fourth below, by contrary motion, with free bass, 370; by Bach, in the sixth above, with free bass, 371; by Mozart, at various intervals, with free bass, 372; by Mozart, in the fifth above, by contrary motion, with free bass, 373.

IV. ACCOMPANIED CANON. Defined, 362, 374. *Examples by the great masters*, by Haydn, in the fifth below, with orchestral accompaniment, 376; by Mendelssohn, in the octave, with orchestral accompaniment, 375; by Mozart, in octave, 374; by Schumann, in the octave, 377.

V. CANON ON A CANTO FERMO. Defined, 379; difficulty of, 380; how to begin, 383. *Exercise worked* (*Major key*), in the seventh below, 384; in the fifth below, 385; in the octave above, 386; (*Minor key*), in the fourth above, 387; in the octave, 388; by inverse movement, 389.

VI. CANON ON A CHORAL, two methods of writing, 391.

(*a*) FIRST METHOD, explained, 391. *Exercise worked*, 392; analysis of, 363-396; chromatic alteration of notes, 393; distance of time varied, 396. *Examples by the great masters*, by Bach, canon in the octave, between treble and tenor, 397; by Bach, canon in the octave, between outside parts, 398; by Bach, canon in the fourth below, 399.

(b) SECOND METHOD, explained, 400. *Examples by the great masters*, by Bach, canonic variations, in the octave, 402; in the fifth below, 403; in the seventh above, 404; in the octave, by augmentation, 405.

VII. CANON ON ONE SUBJECT IN MORE THAN TWO PARTS, any number of parts possible, 407; how to begin, 409; in the octave and fifth, 408; in the unison and octave, 408; may be at any interval, 408; method of composition, 409-411.

(a) THREE-PART CANONS. *Examples by the great masters*, by Byrd, in the fourth and eighth below, strict as to intervals, infinite canon, 412; by W. Fr. Bach, in the fourth and eighth above, free as to intervals, infinite canon, 413; by Mozart, in the unison and eighth, 414; by Mozart, in the second above and sixth below, 415.

(b) THREE-PART CANONS ON A CANTO FERMO, by F. Azopardi, 416.

(c) FOUR-PART CANONS, imitation in the fifth and octave, 417; method of composition, 409. *Examples by the great masters*, by Albrechtsberger, in the fifth and eighth, 417; introduction of rests, 417; by W. Fr. Bach, in the unison, infinite canon, 420; by Clementi, at various intervals, 419; by Mozart, in the fifth and eighth, 418.

(d) FOUR-PART CANONS, WITH FREE PARTS, example by Mozart, 421.

(e) SIX-PART CANONS, by Kirnberger, in the fifth and eighth, infinite canon, 422.

(f) NINE-PART CANONS, by Marpurg, infinite canon, 423.

(g) CLOSE CANONS, defined, 425. *Examples by Friedmann* Bach, in four parts, 426; by Mozart, in four parts, 426; by Marpurg, in nine parts, 427; by Marpurg, in twelve parts, 429.

VIII. CANON WITH MORE THAN ONE SUBJECT, defined, 430; *Double, Triple, and Quadruple* canon, 430; general directions, 432.

(a) DOUBLE CANON (four in two), defined, 430; the parts to be written in double counterpoint, 433. *Examples by the great masters*, by Bach, finite canon, 434; by Mendelssohn,

infinite canon, 433; by Mozart, infinite canon, 435; by Mozart, canon by inversion, 437; by Schumann, infinite canon, 436; crossing of parts, 436; coda, 436; by Bach, with a free bass part, 438.

(b) TRIPLE CANON, defined, 430. *Examples by the great masters*, by Mozart (six in three), 439; example by Raff (six in two), 440.

(c) QUADRUPLE CANONS. *Examples by the great masters*, by Cherubini (eight in four), 442; by Mozart (eight in four), 441; by Mozart (twelve in four), 443.

IX. CURIOSITIES OF CANON.

(a) Canon by augmentation and contrary motion, by Kirnberger, 311;

(b) Canonic imitation, by inverse contrary movement, defined, 454; example by Cherubini, 454; (c) Circular canon defined, 455; example by Bach, 455; (d) Canon by contrary motion, 448; example by Kirnberger, 448; (e) Canon by double and triple augmentation, example by S. Sechter, 447; (f) Polymorphous canon defined, 456; example by Stölzel, 457-463; (g) Retrograde canon defined, 449; example by Bach, in two parts, 449; example by W. Byrd (eight in four), 450; (h) Reverse retrograde canon defined, 451; example by J. C. Lobe, 451; example by Oscar Bolck, 452; example by F. Corder, 453; (i) Riddle canon defined, 465; examples by Bach, referred to, 467; example by Fr. Link, 468; solution, 469, 470; example by Martini, 465; another example by Martini, 466; (j) Various other forms—Canon, four in two, on a canto fermo, with a free part, example by W. Byrd, 471; Canon, six in two, with a free part, example by Tallis, 472; Infinite canon, seven in one, on a ground bass, example by Bach, 473; Infinite canon, thirty-six in one, example by M. Romano, 474.

Canonic imitation by inverse contrary movement, 454.

CANONIC IMITATION defined, 308; example of, 305.

CANTO FERMO, canon on (*see* Canon v.);

- double counterpoint on (*see* Strict Double Counterpoint).
- CHORAL, double counterpoint on (*see* Free Double Counterpoint, 1.); canon on (*see* Canon VI.).
- CHROMATIC alteration of notes—in *canon*, 393; in *double* counterpoint, 138, 139; in *triple* counterpoint, 257.
- Circular canon (*see* Canon IX., c).
- CLOSE CANON, defined, 425, 426; examples, 426-429.
- CLOSE IMITATION, defined, 289; example, 305.
- Coda in infinite canon, 342, 436.
- Compass of subjects to be inverted in double counterpoint, 5.
- COMPOSITION, use of *canon* in, 352; use of *double* counterpoint in, 131; use of *imitation* in, 291-305.
- Consecutive fourths in canon, 315, 363.
- CROSSING OF PARTS—in *canon*, 114, 337, 366, 369, 414, 436; in *double* counterpoint, 4, 137; in *quadruple* counterpoint, 266, 271.
- Diminished seventh, treatment of, in double counterpoint, 108.
- DIMINUTION, *canon* by, 311; example of, 350 (b); *imitation* by, 284; example of, 298, 300.
- DIRECT CANON, 311, 334; example of, 336; *imitation*, 279; example of, 291.
- Dissonances, resolution of, in double counterpoint, 108.
- Distance between two subjects to be inverted, in double counterpoint, 5.
- Double canons (*see* Canon VIII., a).
- DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT, accidentals introduced in, 124, 147, 178; chromatic alteration of notes in, 138, 139; crossing of parts in, 4; defined, 2; (a) *In the octave*, defined, 13, 14; and fifteenth, difference between, 13; example of, 10; table of intervals, 14; (b) *In the tenth*, defined, 49; example of, 11; inversion of both parts in, 50; table of intervals, 51; (c) *In the twelfth*, defined, 82; example of, 11; inversion of both parts in, 82; table of intervals, 85; (d) *In the fifteenth*, and octave—difference between, 13; defined, 13, 14; example of, 10; inversion of both parts in, 17; table of intervals, 14; (e) *In the rarer intervals* (*see* Free Double Counterpoint, IV.).
- Double counterpoint, free (*see* Free Double Counterpoint).
- Double counterpoint, strict (*see* Strict Double Counterpoint).
- Double diminution, imitation by, 298.
- Double imitation, example of, 304.
- Fifth, interval of, in strict double counterpoint, 15, 18.
- FIFTH OF THE CHORD, treatment of, in *strict* double counterpoint, 28, 30, 33, 34, 37, 40, 43, 44, 46; in *triple* counterpoint, 246; in *quadruple* counterpoint, 264.
- Fifth species in strict double counterpoint (*see* Strict Double Counterpoint).
- Finite canon (*see* Canon II., a).
- First species in strict double counterpoint (*see* Strict Double Counterpoint).
- Florid, meaning of, 128.
- Four-part canons (*see* Canon VII., c, d).
- FOURTH, interval of, in *strict* double counterpoint, 15; in *free* double counterpoint, 102; in *canons*, 315, 363; species in strict double counterpoint (*see* Strict Double Counterpoint).
- Free cadence defined, 29.
- Free close, 385, 417.
- FREE DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT, contrast between subject and counterpoint, 129; defined, 102; examples by Bach analyzed, 105-107; exercises for working, 183; *fifth species* only need be practised, 103; fourth, interval of, 102; harmonic resources available in, 102; how to choose subjects, 127; importance of good models, 182; in two parts rare in composition, usually found with free parts added, 184; melodic progression—augmented second and fourth, 112; no restriction as to the length of notes, 103.
- Resolution of dissonances to be considered, 108-111; augmented sixth, 109; diminished seventh, 108; fundamental discords, 110, 111.
- Sequential repetitions, 103; sounding dissonant notes together, 104.
- Spurious kinds of—defined, 179; example by Haydn, 180; by Mendelssohn, 181.

Various employment of, 131; various kinds of, 113.

I. ON A CHORAL, (a) *In the octave*, 113; basses to be figured, 114; exercise worked, 114; implied harmony, 114; modulation, 114; (b) *In the tenth*, 117; exercise worked, 117-120; implied harmony, 115; modulation, 117; root progressions to be considered, 115; similar motion possible, 116; (c) *In the twelfth*, 121; exercise worked, 121; introduction of accidentals, 124; modulation, 124, 125.

II. ON A FLORID SUBJECT.

"Florid" defined, 128; in the octave, tenth, and twelve, relative importance of, 130; subject and counterpoint to be contrasted, 129; (a) *In the octave*, EXAMPLES BY THE GREAT MASTERS, by Bach, contrast in rhythm and melody, 132; by Bach, inversion in a different key and mode, 133; by Bach, sounding dissonant notes together, 134; by Bach, in the twenty-second or triple octave, 135; by Beethoven, treatment of sequence, 148; by Beethoven, 149; by Beethoven, alteration of subject, 150; by Brahms, alteration of subject, 154; freedom of modern writing, 154; by Cherubini, two contrasted melodies, 151; by Handel, 136; by Handel, crossing of parts, 137; by Handel, 138; chromatic alteration of notes, 138, 139; by Handel, 139; by Haydn, alteration of subject, 141; by Haydn, double counterpoint in a sequence, 143; by Haydn, 144; by Mendelssohn, 152; by Mendelssohn, 153; by Mozart, 145; by Mozart, slight alteration of subject, 146; by Mozart, introduction of accidentals, 147; (b) *In the tenth*, by Bach, 155; by Bach, added thirds and sixths, 156-158; simultaneous double counterpoint in the octave, tenth, and twelfth, 159; by Bach, 166-168; by Handel, 161; by Haydn, 163; by Jomelli, added thirds, 162; by Mozart, 164; by E. Prout, 165; (c) *In the twelfth*, by Bach, example of sixths becoming fundamental sevenths in inversion, 169, 170; by Bach, 170; by

Bach, modulation produced in the inversion, 171; by Bach, alteration in position of semitones, 172; by Beethoven, 176; by J. P. Kirnberger, 177; use of accidentals, 178; by Handel, 173; by Handel, sometimes more than one part may be inverted at once, 174; by Mozart, 175.

III. SPURIOUS DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT, defined, 179; example by Haydn, 180; example by Mendelssohn, 181.

IV. WITH FREE PARTS ADDED, added parts improving weak progressions, 205, 206; added parts sometimes themselves in double counterpoint, 203; auxiliary and passing notes, 189, 190; chords added to double counterpoint, 204; free parts defined, 184; harmonic possibilities, 186-188; how to work exercises, 216; no restriction as to the number of chords in a bar, 189; selection of harmony notes, 189; two canti fermi, 185. (a) *In the octave*—Exercise worked in three parts, with free middle part, 192; with free upper part, 193, 194; with free bass, 195, 196; Exercise worked in four parts, with two free middle parts, 197; with two free upper parts, 198; with free parts in treble and tenor, 199; with two free lower parts, 200; with free bass and treble parts, 201. Examples by the great masters, by Bach, 207; by Bach, by adding plain chords, 208; by Beethoven, added part in double counterpoint, 210; by Cherubini, added part in double counterpoint, 211; by Handel, 209; (b) *In the tenth*, by Bach, 212; by Bach, 213; (c) *In the twelfth*, example by Bach, 214; by Mozart, 215.

V. IN THE RARER INTERVALS, 217; (a) *In the ninth*, 218; table of inversions, 218. Examples by the great masters, by Beethoven, 221; by J. C. Lobe, 220; by Marpurg, 219; (b) *In the eleventh*, 222; table of intervals, 222; by Bach, 224; by Bach, 225; by Beethoven, 226; by Cherubini, 223; (c) *In the thirteenth*, 227; table of intervals, 227; by Bach, 229; by Beethoven, added thirds, 231; by

- Beethoven, 232; by Cherubini, 228; by Handel, added thirds, simultaneous double counterpoint in octave and thirteenth, 230; (*d*) *In the fourteenth*, 233; table of intervals, 233; by Bach, 235; by Bach, double counterpoint in ninth and fourteenth, 236; by Beethoven, double counterpoint in thirteenth and fourteenth, 237; by Beethoven, double counterpoint in twelfth and fourteenth, 238.
- Free imitation (*see* Imitation).
- Free parts, added to Canons (*see* Canon III.); added to double counterpoint (*see* Free Double Counterpoint IV.); added to imitation, 290; defined, 184.
- Fundamental discords, treatment of, in double counterpoint, 110, 111.
- GROUND BASS, canon on, example by Bach, 473.
- IMITATION, defined, 275, 276; directions for work, 306; may be in any number of parts, 290; sometimes accompanied by free parts, 290; use of, in composition, 307; *Varieties of*—by augmentation, 284; by diminution, 284.
- By inversion, 280; more frequently met with in minor than in major key, 282; schemes for, in major key, 280, 281; schemes for, in minor key, 282.
- Canonic, 286, 308; canonic, by inverse contrary movement, 454; close, 289; direct, 279; free, 277, 278; interrupted, 286; invertible, 285; partial, 288; with reversed accents (*per arsin et thesin*), 283; retrograde, 287; rhythmic, 276; strict, 277, 278; with free parts, 290; with reversed accents (*per arsin et thesin*), 283. *Examples by the great masters*, by Bach, direct in the unison and octave, 291; by Bach, direct, inverted and by diminution, 298; by Bach, direct and diminished, inverted and diminished, 300; by Bach, double imitation (*per arsin et thesin*) by inversion, 304; by Beethoven, in the octave, 292; by Beethoven, at various distances, 296; by Beethoven, in the fifth and sixth below, 297; by Cherubini, at various intervals, 294; by Cherubini, partial imitation, 294; by Handel, in the fourth below, with a free bass part, 293; by Handel, close imitation by inversion, 301; by Handel, close imitation (*per arsin et thesin*), partial imitation, 303; by Haydn, in the second above, on a pedal, 295; by Mendelssohn, by inversion in a major key, free as to intervals, 302; by Mozart, close imitation in the octave and fifth (*per arsin et thesin*), canonic imitation, 305; by Schumann, by augmentation, 299.
- Infinite Canon (*see* Canon II., *b*).
- INTERRUPTED imitation defined, 286; example of, 286.
- INTERVAL OF INVERSION in double counterpoint, 3; how to find, 4, 6, 7; of two subjects, how to find, 8, 9.
- INTERVAL of time of reply in canon, 312; in imitation, 289.
- Intervals mostly used for inversion in double counterpoint are the octave or fifteenth, tenth and twelfth, 7.
- Introduction of rests in canon—why, 417.
- Inverse contrary movement, canon by (*see* Canon IX., *b*).
- INVERSION, canon by, 280, 334; example, 349; *imitation* by, 280-282; examples, 280-282, 298, 300, 302, 304; in *double counterpoint* at small intervals not used—why, 4, 5; at the octave, tenth, and twelfth mostly used, 7; at the octave, example, 4, 5, 10; at the octave and fifteenth, difference between, 13; at the tenth, example, 11; at the twelfth, example, 11; may be at any interval, 3; meaning of, 3; of two subjects in double counterpoint, distance between, 5.
- INVERSIONS, TABLE OF, in double counterpoint at the octave, 14; at the ninth, 218; at the tenth, 51; at the eleventh, 222; at the twelfth, 85; at the thirteenth, 227; at the fourteenth, 233.
- Limit in the distance of subjects to be inverted, 5.
- MELODIC progression in double counterpoint—in the tenth, 57, 58; in the twelfth, 86; in the free style, 112.

Nine-part canons (*see* Canon VII., *f*).
Nomenclature of canons, 424.

Oboe da caccia, 438.

Octave and unison, use of, in strict double counterpoint, 16.

Open canon defined, 425.

Overlapping of parts in strict double counterpoint, 18, 21.

PARTIAL IMITATION, defined, 288; examples of, 294, 303.

PER ARSIN ET THESIN, defined, 283; canon, 305, 354; imitation, 283, 303-305.

POLYMORPHOUS canon, defined, 456; example of, 457-463.

Quadruple canons (*see* Canon VIII., *c*).

QUADRUPLE COUNTERPOINT, 263; crossing of parts in, 266, 271; defined, 263; fifth of the chord, treatment of, 264; its possible combinations, 263; much rarer than triple counterpoint, 265; *Examples by the great masters*, by Bach, 266, 267; crossing of parts, 266; by Bach, 268; by Cherubini, 265; by Cherubini, 269; by Haydn, 270; crossing of parts, slight alteration of them, 271.

Rests introduced into canon—why, 417.

RETROGRADE canon, defined, 287, 449; examples of, 449, 450.

RETROGRADE imitation, defined, 287; example of, 287.

REVERSE retrograde canon, defined, 451; examples of, 451-453.

REVERSED accents (*per arsin et thesin*), canon with, 354; imitation with, defined, 283; examples, 283, 305.

RHYTHMIC imitation, defined, 276; example, 276.

RIDDLE canon, defined, 465; examples, 465-470.

Round (*see* Canon I.).

Round and other canons, difference between, 333.

SCHEME for inversion, in major key, 280, 281; in minor key, 282.

SECOND INVERSIONS, treatment of, in *triple* counterpoint, 246-251; in *quadruple* counterpoint, 264.

Second species in strict double counterpoint (*see* Strict Double Counterpoint).

Sequence, employment of, in double counterpoint, 143.

SIMULTANEOUS double counterpoint, in the octave, tenth, and twelfth, 159; in the octave and thirteenth, 230; in the twelfth and fourteenth, 237.

SIX-FOUR CHORD, treatment of, in *triple* counterpoint, 246-251; in *quadruple* counterpoint, 264.

Six-part canons (*see* Canon VII., *e*).

SPURIOUS DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT, defined, 179; example by Haydn, 180; example by Mendelssohn, 181.

STRICT DOUBLE COUNTERPOINT:—

IN THE OCTAVE AND FIF-

TEENTH, bass to be figured, 21;

difference between, 13; how to write

the exercises, 20, 21; implied har-

mony, 19; interval of fourth with

bass, 15; interval of fifth with bass,

18; inversion of both parts in double

counterpoint in the fifteenth, 17; keep

within the octave, or fifteenth, 5, 18;

octave and unison in, 16; overlapping

of parts in, 18; table of intervals in,

14; two-part writing in, 15, 18; voices

to write for, 21; *First species*, 18;

cadence in, 18; exercise worked—in

major key in the octave, 21; in major

key in the fifteenth, 22; in minor key

in the octave, 24-26; in minor key in

the fifteenth, 27; harmonic progres-

sion, 19; interval of fifth forbidden—

why, 18; mediant chord, in major

key, 19, 22, 23; in minor key, 24, 26;

no repetition of a note allowed, 21;

Second species, 28; auxiliary notes, use

of, 31; cadence free, 29, 30; disson-

ances, use of, 28; exercise worked,

in major key in the octave, 30, 31;

in minor key in the octave, 32; in

minor key in the fifteenth, 33; fifth as

a harmony note, how used, 33; in-

terval of fourth, how used, 28, 30;

of fifth, how used, 28, 30; mediant

chord in minor key, 32; passing notes,

accented and unaccented, how used,

28, 30; two chords in a bar, possible,

33; *Third species*, 34; cadence, four

notes to one, 35; cadence, three notes

to one, 35; cadence, six notes to one,

39; exercise worked—in major key, in the octave, four notes to one, 36, 37; in major key, in the octave, three notes to one, 39; in minor key, in the octave, four notes to one, 38; in minor key, in the octave, six notes to one, 39; fifth, treatment of, 34, 37; octave, treatment of, 35; second to a unison, treatment of, 35; six-four chord, implied, 36; *Fourth species*, 40; cadence, 40; exercise worked—in major key, in the octave, 41; in minor key, in the octave, 42; fifth of the chord, prohibition of, 40; suspensions available, 40; *Fifth species*, 43; cadence, 43; exercise worked—in major key at the octave, 44; in major key at the fifteenth, 45; in minor key at the octave, 46; fifth of the chord, treatment of, 43, 44, 46; *in actual composition*, example by Handel, 47; example by Mozart, 47.

IN THE TENTH, 49; character of melody entirely changed when inverted, 53; choice of subject, 60, 66; consecutive intervals forbidden—why, 54; contrary and oblique motion only allowed, 55; employment of both counterpoints simultaneously against the subject, 80; false relation of the tritone, 67; harmonic progression—available intervals, 56; implied root progressions may be disregarded, 59; inversion, effect of, 52, 53; inversion of both parts in, 49, 50; keep within a tenth, 51; melodic progression in, 57; similar motion not available—why, 55; table of intervals in, 51; table of intervals to be avoided, 58; *First species*, 60; cadence may if necessary be free, 65; example of bad subject worked, 60-65; exercise worked—in major key, 67; in minor key, 68; *Second species*, 69; accented passing note, employment of, 71; cadence, 69-71; contrary motion between accented notes, 69; exercise worked—in major key, 70; in minor key, 71; oblique motion, 69; passing note quitted by leap of a third, 70; similar motion, when possible, 69; *Third species*, 72; cadence, 72; commencing with implied first inversion, 72; exercise worked—in major key, 72; in

minor key, 73; implied root progressions may be disregarded, 73; *Fourth species*, 74; cadence, 75, 76; exercise worked—in major key, 75; in minor key, 76; *Fifth species*, 77; cadence, 77, 78; exercise worked—in major key, 77; in minor key, 78.

IN THE TWELFTH, cadence always free, 88; harmonic progression—unavailable intervals, 86; inversion, effect of, 84; inversion of both parts in, 82; keep within a twelfth, 87; melodic progression in, 86; table of intervals, 85; table of intervals to be avoided, 86; use of the sixth, 85; *First species*, 90; exercise worked—in major key, 91; in minor key, 91, *Second species*, 92; auxiliary and passing notes, use of, 92; example worked—in major key, 92; in minor key, 93; *Third species*, 94; exercise worked—in major key, 94; in minor key, 95; two chords in a bar, 94; *Fourth species*, 96; breaking the synco-pation, 97; exercise worked—in major key, 96; in minor key, 97; *Fifth species*, 99; exercise worked—in major key, 99; in minor key, 100.

STRICT IMITATION, defined, 277, 278; example of, 278.

SUBJECT, variation of, in free double counterpoint, 141, 146; in triple counterpoint, 255; in quadruple counterpoint, 271.

TABLE OF INTERVALS in double counterpoint, in the octave, 14; in the ninth, 218; in the tenth, 51; in the eleventh, 222; in the twelfth, 85; in the thirteenth, 227; in the fourteenth, 233; to be avoided in strict double counterpoint, in the tenth, 58; in the twelfth, 86.

Third species in strict double counterpoint (*see* Strict Double Counterpoint).

Three-part canons (*see* Canon VII., a, b).

TIME OF REPLY, interval of, in canon, 312; in imitation, 289.

Triple canon (*see* Canon VIII., b).

TRIPLE COUNTERPOINT, 240; chromatic alteration of notes in, 257; consecutive chords of the sixth not available—why, 251; contrasting the three subjects, 255; defined, 240; each part to

appear once in the bass, 253 ; fifth of the chord, treatment of, 246 ; its possible combinations, 241 ; second inversions, rules for treatment of, 247-250 ; selection of chords, 252 ; simplest form of, by adding thirds to double counterpoint in the octave, 243 ; slight modifications allowable, 255 ; *Examples by the great masters*, by Bach, contrasted character of the three subjects, 255 ; by Bach, treatment of the fifth of the chord, 256 ; by Bach, chromatic alteration of notes, 257 ; by Beethoven, 261 ; by Cherubini, made

by the addition of thirds to double counterpoint in the octave, 245 ; by Cherubini, 254 ; by Cherubini, 260 ; by Handel, 258 ; by Haydn, 262 ; by Mozart, contrasted character of the three subjects, 259.

Twelve-part canon (*see* Canon VII., *g*).

TWO-PART CANONS, finite (*see* Canon II., *a*) ; infinite (*see* Canon II., *b*).

Varieties of canon, 311, 334.

Varieties of imitation (*see* Imitation).

VOCAL music, double counterpoint in, 137-139, 161.

MUSICAL ILLUSTRATIONS.

- ALBRECHTSBERGER, G., Four-part Canon, 417, 428.
- AZOPARDI, F., Three-part Canon on a "Canto Fermo," 416.
- BACH, C. P. E., Infinite Canon, by Augmentation and Diminution, 351.
- BACH, J. S., "Art of Fugue," 155-158, 166, 172, 212, 213, 257, 300, 352; Canonic Variations on "Vom Himmel hoch da komm' ich her," 402-405; Cantata, "Ein' feste Burg," 438; Cantata, "Ich, elender Mensch," 225; Concerto in G, 291; Infinite Canon (seven in one) in the unison, on a ground bass, 473; Invention I., 105; Invention II., 107; Musikalisches Opfer, 449, 455; Organ Fugue in C minor, 133, 207; Organ Fugue in E minor, 135, 208; Organ Prelude, "Ach Gott und Herr," 298; Organ Prelude, "Erschienen ist der herrliche Tag," 398; Organ Prelude, "Gottes Sohn ist kommen," 397; Organ Prelude, "In dulci jubilo," 434; Organ Prelude, "Liebster Jesu, wir sind hier," 399; Thirty Variations, 353, 369-371; "Wohltemperirtes Clavier": Fugue 2, 169; Fugue 4, 229, 235; Fugue 10, 134; Fugue 12, 266, 267; Fugue 28, 170; Fugue 30, 132; Fugue 33, 268; Fugue 37, 256; Fugue 40, 10, 11, 159; Fugue 41, 236; Fugue 46, 304; Fugue 47, 171, 214; Prelude 7, 224; Prelude 19, 255.
- BACH, W. Fr., Canon, by Augmentation and Diminution, 350; three-part Infinite Canon, 413; four-part Infinite Canon, 420, 426.
- BEETHOVEN, Mass in D, 221, 226, 231, 237, 261; Quartett, Op. 18, No. 1, 292; Quartett, Op. 18, No. 3, 296; Quartett, Op. 18, No. 4, 149, 210; Round for three voices, 326; Round for four voices, 327; Round for six voices, 328; Sonata, Op. 10, No. 3, 297; Sonata, Op. 26, 150; Sonata, Op. 110, 176, 232, 238; Symphony in D, No. 2, 148; Symphony, Pastoral, 275, 276.
- BOLCK, O., Reverse Retrograde Canon, 452.
- BRAHMS, "Deutsches Requiem," 154.
- BYRD, W., Retrograde Canon (eight in four), 450; Canon (four in two) on a Canto Fermo, 471; "Non Nobis, Domine," 410, 412.
- CHERUBINI, Credo à eight Voci, 442, 454; "Faniska," 330; "Medea," 294; Quartett in C, 151, 211; Treatise on Counterpoint and Fugue, 223, 228, 245, 254, 260, 265, 269, 286.
- CLEMENTI, "Gradus ad Parnassum," 359, 419.
- CORDER, F., Reverse Retrograde Canon, 453.
- DUSSEK, "L'Invocation," 358.
- HANDEL, Anthem, "Have mercy upon me, O God," 161; Anthem, "My song shall be alway," 173; Anthem, "O come let us sing," 139; "Chandos Te Deum," 230; "Hercules," 258; "Jephtha," 174; "Judas Maccabæus," 47, 301; "L'Allegro," 136; "Messiah," 303; "Solomon," 137, 293; "Susanna," 138, 209.
- HAYDN, "Creation," 180; Mass, No. 3, 376; Mass, No. 12, 163; Quartett, Op. 20, No. 2, 270; Quartett, Op. 20, No. 6, 262; Quartett, Op. 55, No. 1, 142; Quartett, Op. 74, No. 2, 141; Quartett, Op. 76, No. 2, 356;

- Symphony in G minor, 143; Symphony in D, 144; Symphony in G, No. 51, 295.
- HAYES, Dr., Round for three voices, 323.
- HILTON, JOHN, Round for three voices, 314.
- JOMELLI, Mass in D, 162.
- KIRNBERGER, J. P., Double Counterpoint in the twelfth, 177; Four-part Canon by Double and Triple Augmentation, with Contrary Movement in two parts, 448; Infinite Canon by Augmentation and Contrary Motion, 311; Infinite Canon for six voices, 422.
- LINK, Fr., Riddle Canon, 468-470.
- LOBE, J. C., Canon by Diminution, 350; Double Counterpoint in the ninth, 220; Reverse Retrograde Canon, 451.
- MARPURG, Double Counterpoint in the ninth, 219; Double Counterpoint in the fourteenth, 234; Infinite Canon for nine voices, 423, 427; Infinite Canon for twelve voices, 429.
- MARTINI, Riddle Canons, 465, 466.
- MENDELSSOHN, "Lerchengesang," Op. 48, No. 4, 433; 95th Psalm, 375; Overture, "Melusina," 302; "St. Paul," 152; Symphony, No. 3, 153; Symphony, No. 4, 181.
- MOZART, Canons, 354, 414, 415, 435, 443; Canonic Adagio for two Corni di bassetto and Fagotto, 373; Fugue for Orchestra (a Fragment), 145; Mass in C minor, 47 (b); Mass in D, No. 7, 439; Mass No. 10, 418, 426; Mass No. 12, 259, 421; Requiem, 175, 215, 372, 441; Round for four voices, 324; Round for six voices, 325; Sere-nade in C minor, 374, 437; Sonata in D, 164, 357; Symphony in G minor, 146; Symphony, "Jupiter," 305; Variations on "Unser dummer Pöbel meint," 147.
- PROUT, Symphony in D, No. 4, 165.
- RAFF, J., Sextett, Op. 178, 440.
- ROMANO, Canon for 36 voices, 474.
- SCHUBERT, Trio in E flat, Op. 100, 355.
- SCHUMANN, "Albumblätter," Op. 124, No. 20, 377; "Die Capelle," Op. 69, No. 6, 436; "Faust," 299.
- SECHTER, Canon with Double and Triple Augmentation, 447.
- STÖLZEL, Polymorphous Canon, 457-463.
- TALLIS, T., "Miserere," 472.

MUSICAL TEXT BOOKS

IN AUGENER'S EDITION

ENGLISH PRINTING & PAPER

			Net s. d.
9171	ALEXANDER, J. "Con Amore." Poetical Introduction to Musical Instruction	3	-
10123	ANTCLIFFE, H. The Successful Music Teacher. Second Impression.	1	6
10124	How to Pass Music Examinations. The Successful Candidate. Words of Advice Paper	1	6
10125	The Amateur Singer. Words of Advice	1	-
	BACH, J. S. Analysis of J. S. Bach's "48 Preludes and Fugues" (Wohltemperites Clavier). By Dr. H. Riemann. Fifth Impression:—		
9205	Part I. 24 Preludes and Fugues ... ..Bound	3	-
9206	Part II. 24 ,, Third Impression ... ..Bound	3	-
9210	BEETHOVEN PIANOFORTE SONATAS. Letters to a Lady, by Dr. C. Reinecke, translated by E. M. Trevenen Dawson	3	9
10091	CARSE, ADAM. Summary of the Elements of Music, with Exercises and Instructions on "How to Write Music"	1	6
10092	Key to the above	1	6
10093	Practical Hints on Orchestration	1	6
	CLARKE, J. A. Catechism of the Rudiments of Music. 384th Edition Paper	1	6
	COCKING, F. The Composer's Vade Mecum. (English-Italian)	-	9
9215	CROKER, NORRIS. Handbook for Singers. Sixth Impression ... ..Bound	3	-
9199	DANNREUTHER, E. Wagner and the Reform of the Opera Bound with Portrait	6	-
10097	DAUGHTRY, O. Ear-Tests and How to prepare for Them. Fourth Impression... ..	2	3
	EVETTS, EDGAR T. The Vocal Student's Practice Register with Vocabulary	-	9
	Modulator for use of Students of the Numeral and Rhythmic Methods (Vocal)	1	6
9179	GOODWIN, A. Practical Hints on the Technique and Touch of Pianoforte Playing. With Illustrations. Fifth Impression ... ..Bound	3	-
	HAMILTON. Dictionary of Musical Terms. Bound 2/3	1	6
10112	HEALE, H. A Short Treatise on the Rudiments of Music. 16mo	-	9

				Net s. d.
10117	HULL, A. EAGLEFIELD.	Organ Playing; its Technique and Expression. 6th Impression. Bound	10	6
10118		Modern harmony: Its explanation and application. Second Impression Bound	9	-
10120		Harmony for Students. 2nd Impression	7	6
10119		250 Questions on Musical Form in 25 tabulated papers, with appendix	1	6
10113		300 Questions on Pianoforte Teaching	1	6
10111	HUNT, E. M.	Scales & Arpeggio Fingering. Classified	-	9
10110	KNOWLES, C. H. G.	Rhymes on the Rules of Harmony, founded on Dr. Prout's "Harmony." Bound	2	3
9177	LA MARA.	Thoughts of Great Musicians. Paper	2	-
6570	LANGLEY, G.	Pianoforte Students' Chart of Technique and Theory Boards	5	-
10122	LINDO, ALGERNON H.	Pianoforte Study for Teachers and Students ... Bound 4/6 (Paper)	2	3
9178	LOBE.	Catechism of Music, Translated and Edited by C. Bache Bound	3	-
10140	McEWEN, JOHN, B.	The Principles of Phrasing and Articulation in Music	3	-
	MACPHERSON, C.	Harmonic Thought. Past and Present	1	6
9214	MATTHEWS, J.	A Handbook of the Organ. Fifth Impression Bound	3	-
10114		100 Examination Questions for Organ Students	-	9
10100	MOZART.	Practical Elements of Thorough Bass, with examples of Harmony and Counterpoint	2	3
9193	MUSIC AND ITS MASTERS.	A Conversation by A. Rubinstein. Third Impression. Bound	3	-
10096	MUSIC LOVER'S BIRTHDAY BOOK, THE.	(E. M. Trevenen Dawson) Bound (gilt edges)	5	-
	MUSICAL CARDS	for learning to read the notes quickly at sight Price per set in case	3	-
9180	NIECKS, PROF. F.	A Concise Dictionary of Musical Terms to which is prefixed an Introduction to the Elements of Music. Eighth Impression. Bound	4	-
9180a		Introduction to the Elements of Music. Third Impression Bound	1	6
8234a	PAUER, E	Harmonious Ideas. Mottoes for Mendelssohn's "Songs without words"... ..	1	-
	PETERSON, FRANKLIN.			
9191		Elements of Music. Twelfth Impression. Bound	1	6
9192		An Introduction to the Study of Theory. Seventh Impression Bound	3	-
10101		A Theoretic Companion to Practice. Fourth Impression Bound	2	3
10102		A Handbook of Musical Form. Sixth Impression. Bound	1	6
10103		Catechism of Music. Sixth Impression. Bound	3	-
10104		The Student's Handbook of Musical Knowledge. Second Impression Bound	2	3

					Net	
					s.	d.
PRACTICE RECORD and Mark Register for Music						
	Pupils. Arranged for three terms...	...	...	...	1	6
	The same, arranged for one term	...	...	...	-	9
10116	POCHHAMMER, A. Popular Handbook of Musical Information. (H. Heale.)	...	...	...Bound	4	-
PROUT, PROF. EBENEZER:—						
9182	Harmony: Its Theory and Practice	Thirty-ninth	Impression	...	...	...
				...Bound	7	6
9182c	Analytical Key to the Exercises in the same.					
	Fifth Impression	...	...	...Bound	6	-
9183	Counterpoint: Strict and Free. Eleventh					
	Impression	...	...	...Bound	7	6
9183a	Additional Exercises to "Counterpoint" with					
	Melodies and Unfigured Bases for harmonizing.					
	Ninth Impression	...	...	...Bound	3	6
9184	Double Counterpoint and Canon. Sixth Impression.					
				Bound	7	6
9185	Fugue. Seventh Impression	...	...	...Bound	7	6
9186	Fugal Analysis. Fourth Impression	...	...	...Bound	7	6
9187	Musical Form. Tenth Impression	...	...	...Bound	7	6
9188	Applied Forms. Eighth Impression	...	...	...Bound	7	6
The Orchestra:						
9189	I. Technique of the Instruments.					
		Seventh Impression.	Bound		7	6
9190	II. Orchestral Combination. Seventh Impression.					
			Bound		7	6
9181	PROUT, LOUIS B. Harmonic Analysis. Second					
	Edition	...	...	...	3	-
10106	Sidelights on Harmony	...	...	...	3	-
10107	Time, Rhythm and Expression. Second Impression				-	9
9210	REINECKE, C. The Beethoven Pianoforte					
	Sonatas. Letters to a Lady. Translated by					
	E. M. Trevenen Dawson	...	...	...	3	9
9198	RIEMANN, Dr. H. Harmony Simplified; or the					
	Theory of the Tonal Functions of Chords. Trans.					
	from the German. Second Impression. Bound				6	-
10115	L'Harmonie simplifiée, ou Théorie des fonctions					
	tonales des accords. Translated by Prof. Georges					
	Humbert	...	...	...	4	6
9201	Catechism of Musical Instruments (Guide to In-					
	strumentation). Third Impression.	...	...	...Bound	3	-
Catechism of Musical History:—						
9202	Part I. History of Musical Instruments, and					
	History of Tone Systems and Notations. Third					
	Impression	...	...	...Bound	3	-
9203	Part II. History of Musical Form, with Bio-					
	graphical Notices. Third Impression	...	...	...Bound	3	-
9204	Catechism of Pianoforte Playing. Third Impression.					
				Bound	3	-
9207	Catechism of Musical Æsthetics. Second Impres-					
	sion	...	...	...Bound	3	-
9209	Catechism of Orchestration	...	...	...Bound	3	-
9208	Introduction to playing from Score	...	...	...Bound	3	-

RIEMANN, Dr. H.—(Contd.)

						Net s. d.
	Analysis of J. S. Bach's "48 Preludes and Fugues."					
9205	Part I. 24 Preludes and Fugues. Fifth					
	Impression ... ..	...	...	Bound	3	-
9206	Part II. 24 Preludes and Fugues. Third					
	Impression ... ..	...	...	Bound	3	-
	ROCKSTRO, W. S. Practical Harmony. ...					Bound 3 -
	Key to "Practical Harmony" ...					Paper 2 3
	Rules of Counterpoint ...					Bound 3 -
	A History of Music. Twenty-fifth Edition. Bound					3 -
9193	RUBINSTEIN, A. Music and its Masters. A Con-					
	versation. Third Impression ...	...	...	Bound	3	-
9212	SCHROEDER, C. Handbook of Violin & Viola					
	Playing. Fourth Impression ...	...	...	Bound	3	-
9211	Catechism of Violoncello Playing. Fourth Impr.					
				Bound	3	-
9213	Handbook of Conducting. (J. Matthews.) Fourth					
	Impression ... ..	...	...	Bound	3	-
9194	SCHUMANN. Advice to Young Musicians ...				-	9
10146	SHEDLOCK, J. S. Beethoven's Pianoforte Sonatas.					
	The Origin and Respective Values of Various					
	Readings ... ..	...	...	...	1	6
10148	SHINN, Dr. F. G. Elementary Ear-Training.					
	I. Melodic ... ..	...	...	...	6	-
	II. Harmonic and Contrapuntal ... ..	...	...	...	6	-
	A Method of Teaching Harmony based upon					Ear-Training:
10150	I. Diatonic Harmony ... ..	...	...	...	6	-
10151	II. Chromatic Harmony and Exceptional Progression				7	6
10152	Musical Memory and its Cultivation ... ..	...	...	...	6	-
10121	SIBLEY, C. The Voice and its Control ... ..	...	...	...	1	6
10131	SIMPSON, J. 300 Questions on the Grammar of					
	Music. Based on the Syllabus of the Associated					
	Board of the R.A.M and R.C.M. ... ..	...	...	...	1	6
10132	Key to the above ... ..	...	...	...	1	6
10133	400 Questions on the Rudiments of Music ... ..	...	...	...	2	6
10134	Key to the above ... ..	...	...	...	2	6
10135	A concise textbook on the Rudiments of Music ...				2	6
9196	STEILER, J. The Great German Composers. Bio-					
	graphical Notices, with some account of their					
	Works. Illustrated ... ..	...	...	Bound	5	-
	SUTTON, R. Elements of the Theory of Music. Bound				3	-
10109	WARREN, J. Catechism of the Harmonium ...				-	9
	WEST, G. F. Hints to Young Teachers of the					
	Pianoforte ... ..	...	...	...	1	6
	WHITTINGHAM, A. 200 Questions and Exercises					
	on F. Davenport's "Elements of Music" ... ..	...	...	...	-	9

AUGENER Ltd.

18 GREAT MARLBOROUGH STREET,
63 CONDUIT STREET (Regent Street Corner) & 57 HIGH STREET, MARYLEBONE,
LONDON, W. 1.



MT
55
P76

Prout, Ebenezer
Double counterpoint and
canon

Musik

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY
